

**PRACTICE
MAKES
PERFECT®**

Basic Japanese

- *Take confident first steps in Japanese*
- *Learn grammar and useful vocabulary in bite-sized lessons*
- *Practice with hundreds of skill-building exercises*

Eriko Sato, PhD

FREE Flashcard App!



**PRACTICE
MAKES
PERFECT®**

Basic Japanese

This page intentionally left blank

**PRACTICE
MAKES
PERFECT®**

Basic Japanese

Eriko Sato, PhD



New York Chicago San Francisco Athens London Madrid
Mexico City Milan New Delhi Singapore Sydney Toronto

Copyright © 2014 by McGraw-Hill Education. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 QVS/QVS 1 0 9 8 7 6 5 4

ISBN 978-0-07-180833-0
MHID 0-07-180833-7

e-ISBN 978-0-07-180834-7
e-MHID 0-07-180834-5

Library of Congress Control Number 2013934767

McGraw-Hill Education, the McGraw-Hill Education logo, Practice Makes Perfect, and related trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of McGraw-Hill Education and/or its affiliates in the United States and other countries and may not be used without written permission. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. McGraw-Hill Education is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

McGraw-Hill Education products are available at special quantity discounts to use as premiums and sales promotions or for use in corporate training programs. To contact a representative, please visit the Contact Us pages at www.mhprofessional.com.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

Contents

Introduction xiii

1 Let's say and write Japanese words! 1

Basic Japanese sounds and kana characters 1

The first 10 hiragana 2

The second 10 hiragana 4

The third 10 hiragana 6

The last 16 hiragana 9

Basic vocabulary with simple sounds 10

Words for body parts 10

Words for nature 11

Double consonants, long vowels, and family terms 12

Small つ 12

Adding a vowel 12

Addressing older family members 12

Diacritics for voiced and plosive sounds and food terms 13

Diacritics ゃ and ゅ 13

Names of Japanese food 14

Palatalized sounds 14

Using small や **ya**, ゆ **yu**, or よ **yo** 14

Japanese words you might already know 15

Reading basic katakana 15

Special katakana combinations 18

Country names written in katakana 18

Writing sentences 20

Kanji 20

2 Getting to know someone 23

Introducing yourself with はじめまして **Hajimemashite** 23

Occupational and respectful titles 23

Asking どちらからですか **Dochira kara desu ka** (*Where are you from?*) 24

The question word どちら **dochira** and the particle から **kara** 24

Personal pronouns あなた anata , 私 watashi , and 僕 boku	24
Names for countries, regions, and cities	24
Describing the nationality of a person	26
To say “x is y” with . . . は wa . . . です desu	27
To express additional items with . . . も mo	27
Nationality	27
Languages	27
Referring to someone with あの ano . . .	29
あの ano	29
Words for people	29
Describing the occupation of a person	29
Creating a modifier using a noun and の no	30
Words for occupation	30
Words for institutions	30
Talking about family members	32
Asking questions	33
Asking yes/no questions	33
Answering with “yes” or “no”	33
Asking “who?”	34
Greeting and parting	36
Greeting	36
Parting	36
Thanking and apologizing	37
Saying “thank you”	37
Apologizing	38
Referring to things around you	39
Demonstrative adjectives	39
Things around you	39
Demonstrative pronouns これ kore , それ sore , and あれ are	39
Asking “which?” “what?” and “whose?”	40
The question word どの dono or どれ dore (<i>which</i>)	40
The question word 何 nani/nan (<i>what</i>)	41
The question word だれの dare no (<i>whose</i>)	41

3 Using numbers 44

Numbers from 1 to 10	44
Numbers from 11 to 99	45
Numbers from 100 to 99,999	46
Expressing age with the counter 歳 sai	47
Telephone numbers	48
Telling time	50
Counters for time: 時 ji and 分 fun	50
Relative time expressions	50
Daily time frames	51

The calendar	53
Days of the week	53
Months	53
Days of the month	53
Asking “when?”	54
Question word いつ itsu (<i>when</i>)	55
Japanese national holidays	55
Asking “how much?” at a store	57
Things you might buy at an electronics store	57
Asking “how much?” withいくら ikura	57
Shopping by saying . . . をください o kudasai	58
Listing nouns with と to	58
Asking “how many?” with counters	59
Using number phrases in a sentence	59
Frequently used counters	59

4 Around town 63

Basic verb forms and verb classes	63
Dictionary and masu forms of verbs	63
Ru and u verbs	63
Frequently used verbs	65
Going to the supermarket	68
Showing the destination with に ni or へ e	68
The polite non-past negative suffix ません masen	68
The negative scope marker は wa	68
Places around town	68
Stores: . . . 屋 ya	69
Asking “where?” and saying <i>anywhere, somewhere,</i> and <i>nowhere</i>	70
Asking “where?”	70
Existential pronouns	71
Negative pronouns	71
Habitual actions	73
Asking about habitual actions with よく yoku (<i>often</i>)	73
Frequency adverbs	73
Making suggestions	74
. . . ませんか masen ka and . . . ましょう mashō	74
Specifying an absolute time with に ni	75
Saying <i>approximately</i>	75
Expressing the purpose of going with . . . に行く ni iku	75
Transportation	77
Specifying the form of transportation with で de	77
Words for transportation	77
Counters for hours and minutes	78
Sentence-ending particles ね ne and よ yo	78

5 Talking about activities 81

Recurring activities 81

Words for proportional frequency 81

The direct object marker を **o** 81

Daily routines 81

Specifying the location of activities with で **de** 82

Activities on weekends 82

The verb *to play* 83

Identifying the action performer 86

Specifying the action performer with the subject marker が **ga** 86

Specifying the accompanying action performer with と **to** 87

Talking about the past 89

... ました **mashita** and ませんでした **masendeshita** 89

The conjunctions それから **sorekara**, でも **demo**, and
ですから **desukara** 89

Expressing your plans 90

... つもりです **tsumori desu** 90

Nai form 91

Telling what you can do: Potential form 92

Making requests 94

Te form 95

Requesting with ... てください **te kudasai** 95

Talking about “now” with ... ている **te iru** 97

Progressive state 97

Habitual state 97

Resulting state 97

Adverbs for intervals 98

Adverbs for the aspects of an action 98

6 Talking about people and things and their locations 101

Existential verbs ある **aru**, いる **iru**, and
いらっしゃる **irassharu** 101

Pronouns for locations 102

Animals 102

Plants 102

... に(は) ... があります/います ... **ni (wa)**

... **ga arimasu/imasu** 102

... は ... にあります/います ... **wa** ... **ni arimasu/imasu** 103

In a house 105

Rooms and areas in a house 105

Household items 106

Things in a bedroom 106

Expressing where things are 108

Relative location words 108

Compass directions 109

Giving directions	111
Useful landmarks for giving directions	111
Actions needed for giving directions	111
Marking the area covered by movement with を o	111
Marking the direction with に ni	111
The conjunction そうすると sōsuruto (<i>then</i>)	112
The ordinal counter creator . . . 目 me	112
Expressing human relationships	113
Expressing events and incidents	115
Words for scheduled events	116
Words for accidents, incidents, and disasters	116
The conjunction それで sorede (<i>as a result</i>)	116

7 Describing things 119

Adjective types	119
Describing buildings and rooms	120
Adjectives in the non-past forms	120
Describing buildings	121
Describing rooms	121
Encouraging someone to do something with どうぞ dōzo	121
Entering your friend's house with おじゃまします ojamashimasu	121
Character of a person	123
Personality	123
Question words for state: どんな donna and どう dō	124
Adverbs of degree	124
Appearance of a person	126
Double subject	126
Words for describing the appearance of people	126
Language learning	128
Expressing degree of difficulty with . . . にくい nikui and . . . やすい yasui	128
Words for describing courses	128
The conjunction それに soreni	129
Deciding on a travel destination	130
Sightseeing attractions	130
Description of places	130
Seasons and climates	130
Listing examples with や ya	130
Places you may visit in Japan	131
Describing a meal at a restaurant	132
Adjectives in the past tense	132
Words for ethnic cuisine	132
Words for tastes	132

Preferences and skills	134
Indicating what you like and dislike with が ga	134
Words for preferences	134
Nominalizing a verb with の no	134
Words for skills	134
Saying what you want	136
Expressing desire with ほしい hoshii	136
Expressing desire with . . . たい tai	136
Clothing	137
Words for colors	137
Words for sizes	137
Descriptions of clothing	137
Showing excessiveness with . . . すぎる sugiru	138
Words for clothing and accessories	138
Verbs for wearing	138
Trying on clothing: . . . みる miru	139
Polite shop language: ございます gozaimasu	139
Adverbs	141
Adverbs derived from adjectives	141
The adverb + する suru	142
Comparisons	143
Comparing two items to each other	143
Equivalent-degree comparisons	143
Superlative comparisons	144
Words for classes of items	144

8 Making connections 147

Stating what you think with 思います omoimasu	147
The quotation particle と to	147
Plain forms in the non-past tense	148
Using a relative clause	149
Using . . . んです n desu for making connections in conversation	151
Asking “why?”	152
Asking for a reason with どうして dōshite	152
Stating a reason with からです kara desu	152
Possible reasons for studying Japanese	152
Sharing experiences	155
Expressing experience with ことがあります koto ga arimasu	155
Experiences you might have	155
The counter 回 kai (. . . <i>times</i>)	156
Forecasting weather	157
Expressing probability with でしょう deshō	157
Words for weather	158

Talking about sickness	159
Talking about a possible case with かもしれません kamoshiremasen	159
Symptoms of illness	159
Diagnosis of illness	159
Listing and connecting actions and states by using the te form	161
The clause conjunctions が ga and から kara	164
The conjunction が ga	164
The conjunction から kara	164
Answer key	167

This page intentionally left blank

Introduction

Practice Makes Perfect: Basic Japanese is designed as a study tool for beginning students of Japanese or as a review for intermediate students of Japanese. It can serve as a helpful self-study tool or as supplementary material for high school or college students of Japanese. It starts with the basic sound and writing systems and provides useful vocabulary and basic grammar so you can communicate in authentic Japanese. You'll learn how to meet new people, hold short conversations, make suggestions, make requests, and express ideas by comparing and contrasting.

Chapters are organized in such a way that learners can understand the characteristics of each building block of Japanese sentences and then gradually gain insight into how these building blocks are combined and used with a variety of vocabulary words for a variety of authentic communicative functions.

Each chapter includes a number of short units, each of which focuses on a single functional, situational, or grammatical concept, such as “Entering your friend’s house おじゃまします **ojamashimasu**” and “Expressing desire with . . . たい **tai**.” Each unit can be completed in 20–30 minutes and provides the concise usage or grammar explanation needed for the purpose of the unit, as well as a thematically collected list of vocabulary, such as words for describing personality. Examples are written in authentic Japanese script and are accompanied by Romanization to clarify the ambiguity in the pronunciation of **kanji** (Chinese characters) and word boundaries as well as to accommodate those who have not gained full command in using the Japanese scripts. Each example is also followed by an English translation to help users learn new vocabulary and sentence structure.

Exercises are carefully presented so that they can mostly be done using the vocabulary words provided in the same unit or in the preceding units; short glossaries are occasionally provided in parentheses wherever they may be needed. Exercises vary: Some are sentence or dialog completion questions, others are reading comprehension questions, and still others are open-ended questions that encourage learners to express themselves freely, using the vocabulary and grammar/usage knowledge they acquired in the unit and the help of a dictionary.

Learning another language requires dedication, time, and frequent practice. By using *Practice Makes Perfect: Basic Japanese*, students at any level can gain or clarify how to use words and structures and strengthen their expressive power in the Japanese language through practice. Only practice makes perfect.

This page intentionally left blank

Let's say and write Japanese words!

1

This chapter introduces the Japanese sounds as well as basic Japanese writing systems. The Japanese sounds are very easy to pronounce except for a few consonants and syllables. By contrast, the Japanese writing system is quite complex. A Japanese sentence can be written by combining two phonetic systems, called **hiragana** and **katakana**, as well as Chinese characters adapted to Japanese, called **kanji**. You will learn how to correctly read and write each **kana** character. You will also see examples of how to use kanji characters.

Basic Japanese sounds and kana characters

There are 46 basic hiragana characters and an equivalent 46 basic katakana characters, each of which represents a syllable sound. Hiragana is used to represent grammatical items and content words that are not written in kanji or katakana. Katakana is used to represent non-Chinese foreign proper names and words from non-Chinese foreign cultures. (Chinese names and things from Chinese culture can be written in kanji.) Katakana can also be used to represent sound symbols and items in Japanese pop culture.

As you will learn later in this chapter, the same usage conventions, such as diacritics and small-sized characters, apply to both hiragana and katakana. However, there is one exception: The long vowels are represented by the elongation mark (ー) in the katakana system but not in the hiragana system.

The following table lists the basic kana characters; in this table, each cell contains a hiragana character, a katakana character, and the Romanization (**romaji**), from left to right.

あ ア a	い イ i	う ウ u	え エ e	お オ o
か カ ka	き キ ki	く ク ku	け ケ ke	こ コ ko
さ サ sa	し シ shi	す ス su	せ セ se	そ ソ so
た タ ta	ち チ chi	つ ツ tsu	て テ te	と ト to
な ナ na	に ニ ni	ぬ ヌ nu	ね ネ ne	の ノ no
は ハ ha	ひ ヒ hi	ふ フ fu	へ ヘ he	ほ ホ ho
ま マ ma	み ミ mi	む ム mu	め メ me	も モ mo
や ヤ ya	-----	ゆ ユ yu	-----	よ ヨ yo
ら ラ ra	り リ ri	る ル ru	れ レ re	ろ ロ ro
わ ワ wa	-----	-----	-----	を ヲ o (wo)
ん n	-----	-----	-----	-----

Japanese has five basic vowels:

- ♦ **a**, which sounds like the vowel in *ah*
- ♦ **i**, which sounds like the vowel in *eat*
- ♦ **u**, which sounds like the vowel in *boot*, but without lip rounding
- ♦ **e**, which sounds like the vowel in *eight*
- ♦ **o**, which sounds like the vowel in *oat*

The vowels are represented by the characters in the first row in the preceding table.

Note that the consonants **r** and **f** are quite different in Japanese than in English:

- ♦ Japanese **r** is made by tapping the tip of the tongue behind the upper teeth just once, like the brief flap sound *tt* in *letter* in American English. As shown in the above table, **r** is represented in five different basic hiragana or katakana characters.
- ♦ The characters ふ and フ are specified as **fu** but are pronounced by bringing the upper and lower lips close to each other and blowing air between them gently.

Additional sounds can also be represented, using a single character combined with diacritics or using two characters, as discussed later in this chapter. For now, you just need to know that pitch can contribute to word meanings in Japanese. For example, in Tokyo Japanese, あめ **ame** means *rain* if the first syllable is in high pitch and the second syllable is in low pitch, but it means *candy* if the first syllable is in low pitch and the second syllable is in high pitch. Such a difference cannot be represented by the kana system, but the context can clarify the meanings. Furthermore, words written in kanji are distinct. For example, the word *rain* is 雨 (あめ **ame**), and the word *candy* is 飴 (あめ **ame**).

EXERCISE

1.1

Read the hiragana and katakana characters in the table on page 1, from left to right, row by row, from the top row to the bottom row, paying attention to the pronunciation, as in **a, i, u, e, o, ka, ki, ku** . . .

The first 10 hiragana

The first 10 hiragana include five syllables that are just vowels, **a, i, u, e, and o**, and five syllables with the consonant **k**, which are **ka, ki, ku, ke, and ko**.

EXERCISE

1-2

Practice writing the first 10 hiragana characters, paying attention to the order and direction of the strokes. Be careful because the hiragana characters あ **a** and お **o** are similar in shape. In some fonts, the third and the fourth strokes in the hiragana き **ki** are connected, appearing as き, but they are usually separate when this character is handwritten.

㇀ ㇁ あ	あ あ	_____	_____	_____
㇂ ㇃ い	い い	_____	_____	_____
㇄ ㇅ う	う う	_____	_____	_____
㇆ ㇇ え	え え	_____	_____	_____
㇈ ㇉ お	お お	_____	_____	_____
㇊ ㇋ か	か か	_____	_____	_____
㇌ ㇍ き	き き	_____	_____	_____
㇎ ㇏ く	く く	_____	_____	_____
㇐ ㇑ け	け け	_____	_____	_____
㇒ ㇓ こ	こ こ	_____	_____	_____

EXERCISE

1-3

Read the following sequences of hiragana, row by row. Do not move on to a new row until you are able to read the current row very quickly. Repeat as many times as you need until you can read them very smoothly. You may try to read them backward for additional practice.

あいあいう
 あいうえあうい
 おあうあお
 かきかきく
 くきけくきくこ
 こけこきか
 あかあおあ
 いきけきえけき
 おこえこけ

EXERCISE

1-4

The following are some words that can be written using some of the first 10 hiragana characters. Read them aloud. For a greater challenge, cover the romaji as you work on this exercise. You may find it strange to have multiple syllables that are just vowels within a word, so watch out!

1. love	あい	ai
2. red	あか	aka
3. house	いえ	ie
4. squid	いか	ika
5. train station	えき	eki
6. top	うえ	ue
7. face	かお	kao
8. oyster	かき	kaki
9. chrysanthemum	きく	kiku
10. carp	こい	koi

EXERCISE

1-5

Write the hiragana for the following words. Refer to the romaji in the table on page 1.

1. shellfish	kai	_____
2. pond	ike	_____
3. hill	oka	_____
4. autumn	aki	_____
5. blue	ao	_____

The second 10 hiragana

The second 10 hiragana characters include five syllables with the consonant **s** and five syllables with the consonant **t**. When the vowel is **i**, we get **shi** and **chi** rather than **si** and **ti**. When the vowel is **u**, we get **tsu** rather than **tu**.

EXERCISE

1.6

Practice writing the second 10 hiragana characters, paying attention to the order and direction of the strokes. Note that the second and the third strokes of the hiragana さ **sa** are connected in some fonts, as in さ, appearing like a mirror-image of the hiragana ち **chi**, but they are usually separate when this character is handwritten.

ン ギ さ	さ さ	_____	_____	_____	_____
し	し し	_____	_____	_____	_____
ー す	す す	_____	_____	_____	_____
ン ガ せ	せ せ	_____	_____	_____	_____
そ	そ そ	_____	_____	_____	_____
ニ 7 た	た た	_____	_____	_____	_____
ニ ち	ち ち	_____	_____	_____	_____
つ	つ つ	_____	_____	_____	_____
て	て て	_____	_____	_____	_____
い と	と と	_____	_____	_____	_____

EXERCISE

1.7

Read the following sequences of hiragana, row by row. Do not move on to a new row until you are able to read the current row very quickly. Repeat as many times as you need until you can read them very smoothly. You may try to read them backward for additional practice.

さしさしす
 すせそすせそす
 しさそすせ
 たちちたつ
 つちてとちてと
 たてとつち
 さちさちき
 えせてせえせて

おこそとこ
いきしちき
あかさたかきた
うくすつす

EXERCISE

1-8

The following are some words that can be written using some of the first 20 hiragana characters. Read them aloud. For a greater challenge, cover the romaji as you work on this exercise.

- | | | |
|-------------|------|-------------------|
| 1. cow | うし | ushi |
| 2. lie | うそ | uso |
| 3. umbrella | かさ | kasa |
| 4. sushi | すし | sushi |
| 5. world | せかい | sekai |
| 6. octopus | たこ | tako |
| 7. subway | ちかてつ | chikatetsu |
| 8. moon | つき | tsuki |

EXERCISE

1-9

Write the hiragana for the following words. Refer to the romaji in the table on page 1.

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-------|
| 1. soil | tsuchi | _____ |
| 2. home | uchi | _____ |
| 3. hand | te | _____ |
| 4. eagle | taka | _____ |
| 5. basement | chika | _____ |
| 6. iron | tetsu | _____ |

The third 10 hiragana

The third 10 hiragana include five syllables with the consonant **n** and five syllables with the consonant **h**. However, remember that ふ is not pronounced as **hu** but as **fu**.

EXERCISE

1-10

Practice writing the third 10 hiragana characters, paying attention to the order and direction of the strokes.

ナ	ナ	ナ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
ニ	ニ	ニ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
ヌ	ヌ	ヌ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
ネ	ネ	ネ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
ノ	ノ	ノ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
ハ	ハ	ハ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
ヒ	ヒ	ヒ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
フ	フ	フ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
ヘ	ヘ	ヘ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
ホ	ホ	ホ	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

EXERCISE

1-11

Read the following sequences of hiragana, row by row. Do not move on to a new row until you are able to read the current row very quickly. Repeat as many times as you need until you can read them very smoothly. You may try to read them backward for additional practice.

なになにぬ
 ぬねぬねなにの
 のにねぬな
 はひはひふ
 ふへひへふへほ
 ほはひへふ
 あかきたな
 なたさかはなた
 いきしちに

せてねへけえね
ほことこい
はほはほぬ
くへしつてのつ
はなさかな

EXERCISE

1-12

Read the following words, which are written using some of the first 30 hiragana characters.
For a greater challenge, cover the romaji as you work on this exercise.

- | | | |
|-----------|-----|---------------|
| 1. dog | いぬ | inu |
| 2. fish | さかな | sakana |
| 3. sand | すな | sunna |
| 4. summer | なつ | natsu |
| 5. meat | にく | niku |
| 6. cat | ねこ | neko |
| 7. flower | はな | hana |
| 8. fire | ひ | hi |
| 9. ship | ふね | fune |
| 10. star | ほし | hoshi |

EXERCISE

1-13

Write the hiragana for the following words. Refer to the romaji in the table on page 1.

- | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-------|
| 1. chopsticks | hashi | _____ |
| 2. country | kuni | _____ |
| 3. pear | nashi | _____ |
| 4. hole | ana | _____ |
| 5. grave | haka | _____ |

The last 16 hiragana

The remaining 16 characters in the table on page 1 include five syllables with the consonant **m**, three syllables with the consonant **y**, five syllables with the consonant **r**, and **wa** and **n**. In Japanese, the **y** sound does not contrast meaning when placed before the vowels **i** or **e**. That's why **yi** and **ye** are missing from the hiragana table. Similarly, the consonant **w** can contrast meaning only if it appears before the vowel **a** in the hiragana system. That's why **wi**, **wu**, and **we** are missing from the hiragana table. **Wo** (を) does appear in the table, but it is used only for the direct object particle, and it actually sounds like **o**. As discussed earlier, the Japanese **r** is very different from the English **r**. It is closer to the English **l** but not quite the same. The consonant **n** can form an independent syllable (or **mora**, in linguistic terms). Note that the two strokes of the hiragana り **ri** are connected in some fonts, as in り, but they are usually separate when this character is handwritten.

EXERCISE

1-14

Practice writing the last 16 hiragana characters, paying attention to the order and direction of the strokes.

マ	マ	マ	マ	マ	マ	マ	マ
ミ	ミ	ミ	ミ	ミ	ミ	ミ	ミ
ム	ム	ム	ム	ム	ム	ム	ム
メ	メ	メ	メ	メ	メ	メ	メ
モ	モ	モ	モ	モ	モ	モ	モ
ヤ	ヤ	ヤ	ヤ	ヤ	ヤ	ヤ	ヤ
ユ	ユ	ユ	ユ	ユ	ユ	ユ	ユ
ヨ	ヨ	ヨ	ヨ	ヨ	ヨ	ヨ	ヨ
ラ	ラ	ラ	ラ	ラ	ラ	ラ	ラ
リ	リ	リ	リ	リ	リ	リ	リ
ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル	ル
レ	レ	レ	レ	レ	レ	レ	レ
ロ	ロ	ロ	ロ	ロ	ロ	ロ	ロ
ワ	ワ	ワ	ワ	ワ	ワ	ワ	ワ

こ を を _____
 ん ん _____

EXERCISE

1-15

Read the following sequences of hiragana, row by row. Do not move on to a new row until you are able to read the current row very quickly. Repeat as many times as you need until you can read them very smoothly. You may try to read them backward for additional practice.

まみまみむ
 むめもまめむ
 もまもまむ
 やゆよやよ
 らりらりら
 れろるろる
 われんわね
 はまやらわらや
 ふむゆるぬ
 すぬなはほ
 らろるろられを
 ぬめあおぬ

Basic vocabulary with simple sounds

Now that you are familiar with all of the basic kana characters, you can combine them into some basic Japanese words.

Words for body parts

Many of the vocabulary words for body parts are easy to pronounce. Practice saying each one as you point to the appropriate part of the body.

foot/leg	あし	ashi
head	あたま	atama
belly	おなか	onaka
face	かお	kao
mouth	くち	kuchi
back	せなか	senaka
nose	はな	hana
ear	みみ	mimi
eye	め	me

Words for nature

As you practice saying these Japanese words for nature, picture them. For example, as you say あめ, picture rain falling.

あめ	ame	rain
いし	ishi	stone
いわ	iwa	rock
うみ	umi	ocean
かわ	kawa	river
き	ki	tree
くも	kumo	cloud
そら	sora	sky
たに	tani	valley
つき	tsuki	the moon
つち	tsuchi	soil
ひ	hi	fire
ほし	hoshi	star
やま	yama	mountain
ゆき	yuki	snow

EXERCISE

1-16

Choose the correct English translation from the options in parentheses.

1. め (eye, mouth, nose, ear)
2. みみ (eye, mouth, nose, ear)
3. くち (eye, mouth, nose, ear)
4. はな (eye, mouth, nose, ear)
5. あし (head, belly, foot, back)
6. あたま (face, head, hand, foot)

EXERCISE

1-17

Match the Japanese words and their English counterparts.

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1. やま _____ | a. ocean |
| 2. そら _____ | b. sky |
| 3. かわ _____ | c. mountain |
| 4. うみ _____ | d. river |

Write the following words in Japanese.

1. *mouth* _____
2. *head* _____
3. *mountain* _____
4. *river* _____
5. *star* _____

Double consonants, long vowels, and family terms

Here you will learn how to represent double consonants and long vowels, and then you will see them used in words that Japanese use to address older family members.

Small つ

To represent the brief abrupt pause found in double consonants, use the small つ. For example, *kitte* (*postage stamp*) is written as きって.

Adding a vowel

Together, a hiragana character and the vowel **o** followed by う **u** jointly form a syllable that sounds like the long vowel **ō**. So, おとうさん (*father*) is read as **otōsan**. Similarly, a hiragana character with a vowel **e** followed by い **i** jointly form a syllable that sounds like the long vowel **ē**. For example, せんせい (*teacher*) is read as **sensē**. (However, in this book, **ē** in such cases is still specified as **ei** in romaji, as in **sensei**, following the common practice in most romaji Japanese dictionaries.)

Addressing older family members

The Japanese address their older family members by using the following kinship terms, although they address their younger family members by using their given name or nickname.

<i>father</i>	おとうさん	otōsan
<i>mother</i>	おかあさん	okāsan
<i>older brother</i>	おにいさん	onīsan
<i>older sister</i>	おねえさん	onēsan

EXERCISE

1-19

Read the following words written in hiragana aloud. For a greater challenge, cover the romaji as you work on this exercise.

- | | | |
|------------------|------|---------------|
| 1. teacher | せんせい | sensei |
| 2. ice | こおり | kōri |
| 3. street | とうり | tōri |
| 4. postage stamp | きって | kitte |

EXERCISE

1-20

Write the following words in hiragana.

- | | |
|------------------|-------|
| 1. father | _____ |
| 2. mother | _____ |
| 3. older brother | _____ |
| 4. older sister | _____ |

Diacritics for voiced and plosive sounds and food terms

Two diacritics, ` and °, are used to represent additional syllable sounds that can contribute to the meaning of Japanese words. Here you will learn how to use these diacritics and then see them used in some Japanese food terms.

Diacritics ` and °

By adding the diacritic mark ` at the upper-right corner of a certain character, you can indicate that its beginning consonant is voiced. By adding the mark ° at the upper-right corner of a certain character, you change its beginning consonant to **p**. Note that ` changes **h** and **f** to **b**. The syllable **ji** is usually represented by じ, and it is also represented by ぢ in limited cases. Similarly, the syllable **zu** is usually represented by ず, and it is also represented by づ in limited cases. The following table shows which characters they are combined with and how they are read:

が ga	ぎ gi	ぐ gu	げ ge	ご go
ざ za	じ ji	ず zu	ぜ ze	ぞ zo
だ da	ぢ ji	づ zu	で de	ど do
ば ba	び bi	ぶ bu	べ be	ぼ bo
ぱ pa	ぴ pi	ぷ pu	ぺ pe	ぽ po

Names of Japanese food

Japanese food is popular overseas. You might see some of the following on the menu at a Japanese restaurant in your country:

<i>sushi</i>	すし	sushi
<i>sashimi (sliced raw fish)</i>	さしみ	sashimi
<i>tempura (deep-fried battered seafood, vegetables, and mushrooms)</i>	てんぷら	tempura
<i>sukiyaki (beef stew in the Japanese style)</i>	すきやき	sukiyaki
<i>buckwheat noodle</i>	そば	soba
<i>thick white noodle</i>	うどん	udon

EXERCISE

1·21

Practice writing the following Japanese words.

すし	_____	_____	_____	_____
さしみ	_____	_____	_____	_____
てんぷら	_____	_____	_____	_____
すきやき	_____	_____	_____	_____
そば	_____	_____	_____	_____
うどん	_____	_____	_____	_____

Palatalized sounds

Palatalized sounds are pronounced with the body of the tongue raised toward the palate. Here you will learn how to represent these sounds and see their use in familiar Japanese words.

Using small や **ya**, ゆ **yu**, or よ **yo**

To express a palatalized sound like **kya** or **hyu**, use a character that represents the initial consonant and the vowel **i** and then add small-sized や **ya**, ゆ **yu**, or よ **yo**, depending on the vowel needed. The following table shows how to represent palatalized syllables in both hiragana and katakana:

きゃ kya	きゅ kyu	きょ kyo
ぎゃ gya	ぎゅ gyu	ぎょ gyo
しゃ sha	しゅ shu	しょ sho
じゃ ja	じゅ ju	じょ jo
ちゃ cha	ちゅ chu	ちょ cho
ぢゃ ja	ぢゅ ju	ぢょ jo
にゃ nya	にゅ nyu	にょ nyo
ひゃ hya	ひゅ hyu	ひょ hyo
びゃ bya	びゅ byu	びょ byo
ぴゃ pya	ぴゅ pyu	ぴょ pyo
みゃ mya	みゅ myu	みょ myo
りゃ rya	りゅ ryu	りょ ryo

Japanese words you might already know

The following words related to Japanese culture might be already familiar to you:

<i>calligraphy</i>	しよどう	shodō
<i>flower arranging</i>	いけばな	ikebana
<i>judo</i>	じゅうどう	jūdō
<i>karate</i>	からて	karate
<i>kendo (Japanese fencing)</i>	けんどう	kendō
<i>kimono</i>	きもの	kimono
<i>manga</i>	マンガ	comic books
<i>origami</i>	おりがみ	origami
<i>tea ceremony (chado)</i>	さどう	sadō

EXERCISE

1.22

Write the following words in Japanese, using hiragana.

1. *calligraphy* _____
2. *origami* _____
3. *judo* _____
4. *kimono* _____
5. *flower arranging* _____

EXERCISE

1.23

Read the following place names written in hiragana and guess what they are.

1. どうきょう _____
2. きょうと _____
3. おおさか _____

Reading basic katakana

Each hiragana character was created by simplifying or deforming some kanji character, and each katakana character was created by taking a part of some kanji. Whereas hiragana characters have more curved lines, katakana characters have more straight lines and angles. The

following table shows pairs of hiragana and katakana and the stroke order of katakana characters:

あ	ア	ㇿア	つ	ツ	ㇿ ツ	も	モ	ㇿモ
い	イ	ㇿイ	て	テ	ㇿ テ	や	ヤ	ㇿヤ
う	ウ	ㇿウ	と	ト	ㇿ ト	ゆ	ユ	ㇿユ
え	エ	ㇿエ	な	ナ	ㇿ ナ	よ	ヨ	ㇿヨ
お	オ	ㇿオ	に	ニ	ㇿ ニ	よ	ヨ	ㇿヨ
か	カ	ㇿカ	ぬ	ヌ	ㇿ ヌ	よ	ヨ	ㇿヨ
き	キ	ㇿキ	ね	ネ	ㇿ ネ	ら	ラ	ㇿラ
く	ク	ㇿク	の	ノ	ㇿ ノ	り	リ	ㇿリ
け	ケ	ㇿケ	は	ハ	ㇿ ハ	る	ル	ㇿル
こ	コ	ㇿコ	ひ	ヒ	ㇿ ヒ	れ	レ	ㇿレ
さ	サ	ㇿサ	ふ	フ	ㇿ フ	ろ	ロ	ㇿロ
し	シ	ㇿシ	へ	ヘ	ㇿ ヘ	わ	ワ	ㇿワ
す	ス	ㇿス	ほ	ホ	ㇿ ホ	を	ヲ	ㇿヲ
せ	セ	ㇿセ	ま	マ	ㇿ マ	ん	ン	ㇿン
そ	ソ	ㇿソ	み	ミ	ㇿ ミ			
た	タ	ㇿタ	む	ム	ㇿ ム			
ち	チ	ㇿチ	め	メ	ㇿ メ			

EXERCISE

1-24

Look at the preceding table and list the katakana characters that conform to the following descriptions.

1. Katakana characters that have only one stroke: _____
2. Katakana characters that have two separate simple horizontal lines: _____
3. Katakana characters that look similar to the hiragana counterparts: _____

EXERCISE

1-25

Read the following pairs of katakana characters and write out in Japanese. They look similar, so be careful.

1. シ and ツ _____
2. ン and ソ _____
3. ク and ケ _____
4. ク and ワ _____
5. ク and タ _____
6. ロ and コ _____
7. ル and レ _____
8. チ and テ _____

EXERCISE

1-26

Read the following words written in katakana and guess what they mean. Refer to the table on page 16, as needed.

1. テスト _____
2. カメラ _____
3. ネクタイ _____
4. ホテル _____

EXERCISE

1-27

Read the following words written in katakana aloud, paying attention to the diacritics.

- | | | |
|----------------------|------|----------------|
| 1. TV | テレビ | terebi |
| 2. radio | ラジオ | rajio |
| 3. computer, PC | パソコン | pasokon |
| 4. convenience store | コンビニ | konbini |
| 5. pen | ペン | pen |

Read the following words written in katakana aloud, paying attention to long vowels and double consonants. Remember that the elongation mark (ー) represents a long vowel.

1. boat	ボート	bōto
2. pet	ペット	petto
3. internet	インターネット	intānetto
4. soccer	サッカー	sakkā

Special katakana combinations

The katakana system allows some combinations of characters that are not available in the hiragana system because katakana is used to represent non-Japanese names and words. Examples include:

che	チェ	(チェス <i>chess</i>)
di	ディ	(アンディー <i>Andy</i>)
du	デュ	(デュエット <i>duet</i>)
fa	ファ	(ソファ <i>sofa</i>)
fe	フェ	(カフェ <i>cafe</i>)
fi	フィ	(フィアンセ <i>fiancé</i>)
fo	フォ	(フォーク <i>fork</i>)
je	ジェ	(ジェットコースター <i>rollercoaster</i>)
she	シェ	(シェークスピア <i>Shakespeare</i>)
ti	ティ	(ティーシャツ <i>T-shirt</i>)
tsa	ツァ	(モッツァレッタ <i>mozzarella</i>)
tu	トゥ	(トゥール <i>Tours</i>)
va	ヴァ	(ヴァイオリン <i>violin</i>)
ve	ヴェ	(ヴェルヴェット <i>velvet</i>)
vo	ヴォ	(ヴォーカル <i>vocal</i>)
we	ウェ	(ウェーター <i>waiter</i>)
wi	ウィ	(ウィーン <i>Vienna</i>)
wo	ウォ	(ウォークマン <i>Walkman</i>)

Country names written in katakana

Country names are written in katakana. The exceptions are country names that are conventionally written in kanji. You or some of your friends may be from these countries.

<i>Australia</i>	オーストラリア	Ōsutoraria
<i>Canada</i>	カナダ	Kanada
<i>France</i>	フランス	Furansu
<i>India</i>	インド	Indo
<i>Russia</i>	ロシア	Roshia
<i>United States of America</i>	アメリカ	Amerika

EXERCISE

1-29

Read the following city names written in katakana. For a greater challenge, cover the romaji as you work on this exercise.

- | | | |
|--------------|--------|------------------|
| 1. Toronto | トロント | Toronto |
| 2. Boston | ボストン | Bosuton |
| 3. London | ロンドン | Rondon |
| 4. Vancouver | バンクーバー | Bankübā |
| 5. Melbourne | メルボルン | Meruborun |

EXERCISE

1-30

Read the following words that name Western food and beverages. For a greater challenge, cover the romaji as you work on this exercise.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------|-------------------|
| 1. hamburger | ハンバーガー | hanbāgā |
| 2. hotdog | ホットドッグ | hottodoggu |
| 3. pancake | パンケーキ | pankēki |
| 4. coffee | コーヒー | kōhī |
| 5. orange juice | オレンジジュース | orenjijūsu |
| 6. fondue | フォンデュ | fondu |

EXERCISE

1-31

Write the following country names in katakana.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| 1. United States of America | _____ |
| 2. Canada | _____ |
| 3. Russia | _____ |
| 4. France | _____ |

Writing sentences

Here are some rules for writing Japanese sentences:

1. The Japanese text can be written from left to right and top to bottom, as in English, but it can also be written from top to bottom and right to left. The Japanese period is 。, and the Japanese comma is 、 or , .
2. The character を is used only as a participle marking a direct object in modern Japanese. The character を is pronounced as **o**, just like お. Some people pronounce を as **wo** when reading a kana chart, but they still pronounce it as **o** in sentences.
3. When the character は is used as a topic marker, its pronunciation is **wa** rather than **ha**. When the character へ is used as a direction-marking particle, it is read as **e** rather than as **he**.

EXERCISE

1-32

Read the following sentences out loud. For a greater challenge, cover the romaji as you work on this exercise.

1. エミリーはすしをたべました。

Emiri wa sushi o tabemashita.

Emily ate sushi.

2. ボストンへいきますが、とまりません。



Bosuton e ikimasu ga, tomarimasen.

I'll go to Boston but won't stay there overnight.

Kanji

Most kanji characters can be pronounced in both Japanese and Chinese ways. For example, the Japanese way of pronouncing 人 is **hito**, and the Chinese way of pronouncing it is **nin** or **jin**. There is no standard rule for the difference, so you need to learn each one individually. In this book, romaji shows how kanji characters are read in each phrase and sentence.

The following table shows some simple kanji characters that are frequently used as components of other kanji characters:

English Word	Kanji	Stroke Order	Usage Examples
person	人		人 hito (person); 日本人 Ni-hon-jin (a Japanese person); アメリカ人 Amerika-jin (an American person); 三人 san-nin (three people)
mountain	山		山 yama (mountain); 山田 Yama-da (Yamada, a family name); 富士山 Fu-ji-san (Mt. Fuji)

English Word	Kanji	Stroke Order	Usage Examples
river	川	㇀ ㇁ ㇂ ㇃	川 kawa (<i>river</i>); 川口 Kawa-guchi (<i>Kawaguchi</i> , a family name)
sun	日	㇀ ㇁ ㇂ ㇃	日 hi (<i>the sun</i>); 日本 Ni-hon or Nip-pon (<i>Japan</i>); 日曜日 Nichi-yō-bi (<i>Sunday</i>)
mouth	口	㇀ ㇁ ㇂	口 kuchi (<i>mouth</i>); 人口 jin-kō (<i>population</i>)
tree	木	㇀ ㇁ ㇂ ㇃	木 ki (<i>tree</i>); 木曜日 Moku-yō-bi (<i>Thursday</i>)
fire	火	㇀ ㇁ ㇂ ㇃	火 hi (<i>fire</i>); 火曜日 Ka-yō-bi (<i>Tuesday</i>)
soil	土	㇀ ㇁ ㇂	土 tsuchi (<i>soil</i>); 土曜日 Do-yō-bi (<i>Saturday</i>)
water	水	㇀ ㇁ ㇂ ㇃	水 mizu (<i>water</i>); 水曜日 Sui-yō-bi (<i>Wednesday</i>)
moon	月	㇀ ㇁ ㇂ ㇃	月 tsuki (<i>the moon</i>); 月曜日 Getsu-yō-bi (<i>Monday</i>)

Kanji characters that represent verbs and adjectives need to be followed by hiragana that show inflectional endings, as in 書く **kaku** (*write*) and 書いた **kaita** (*wrote*). The following are some frequently used verbs written in kanji and hiragana. A dash in romaji separates the portion that represents kanji and the portion that represents hiragana.

go	行く	i-ku
come	来る	ku-ru
return	帰る	kae-ru
change	変える	ka-eru
read	読む	yo-mu
write	書く	ka-ku
walk	歩く	aru-ku
buy	買う	ka-u

The following are some frequently used adjectives written in kanji and hiragana:

expensive	高い	taka-i
cheap	安い	yasu-i
quiet	静かな	shizu-kana
fun	楽しい	tano-shii
easy	簡単な	kantan-na
difficult	難しい	muzuka-shii

EXERCISE

1-33

Practice writing the following basic kanji characters, using the correct stroke order.

person	人	ノ	人				
mountain	山	㇀	山	山			
river	川	㇀	川	川			
sun	日	㇀	日	日			
mouth	口	㇀	口	口			
tree	木	㇀	木	木			
fire	火	㇀	火	火			
soil	土	㇀	土	土			
water	水	㇀	水	水			
moon	月	㇀	月	月			

EXERCISE

1-34

The following words are written in kanji followed by hiragana in parentheses. Write the English equivalent for each one.

1. 口 (くち) _____
2. 山 (やま) _____
3. 川 (かわ) _____
4. 火 (ひ) _____
5. 月 (つき) _____
6. 木 (き) _____

Getting to know someone

2

This chapter introduces basic vocabulary words and sentence structures that are needed for identifying people and things.

Introducing yourself with はじめまして Hajimemashite

When you want to introduce yourself to someone, approach to him/her and say はじめまして **Hajimemashite**. This literally means *Beginning*, but its function is to clarify the fact that you are meeting the person for the very first time and are willing to get to know him/her. Then say your name and add です **desu** and say 宜しくお願いします **Yoroshiku onegai shimasu**, which literally means *Please be nice to me* but actually shows your modest attitude and your desire to have a good relationship with the person. If someone says this to you, you should respond with こちらこそ宜しくお願いします **Kochira koso yoroshiku onegai shimasu**, which means *It's me who should say that*.

Occupational and respectful titles

When addressing a non-family person, try to use his or her occupational title, such as 先生 **sensei** (teacher) or 社長 **shachō** (company president), after his or her family name. If an occupational title is not available, use a respectful title such as さん **san** after his or her family name or given name. There are additional respectful titles, but さん **san** is most neutral and versatile. Make sure not to use an occupational title or a respectful title after your name, even if other people keep addressing you with them. The following are some examples of occupational titles and their use with the family name **Tanaka**:

Professors, teachers, medical doctors, lawyers, etc.	先生	sensei	田中先生	Tanaka sensei
Company president	社長	shachō	田中社長	Tanaka shachō
Division manager	部長	buchō	田中部長	Tanaka buchō

The following are some respectful titles:

neutral (for most adults)	... さん	... san
affectionate (for children)	... ちゃん	... chan
business-like (for clients)	... 様	... sama

Jane White introduces herself to Keiko Hayashi at a party. Complete their conversation.

WHITE はじめまして。ホワイトです。宜しくお願いします。

Hajimemashite. Howaito desu. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

HAYASHI ホワイトさんですか。

Howaito-san desu ka.

WHITE はい。

Hai.

HAYASHI はじめまして。林です。_____ 宜しくお願いします。

Hajimemashite. Hayashi desu. _____ yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

Asking どちらからですか Dochira kara desu ka (Where are you from?)

After you introduce yourself to someone for the first time, you might next want to ask the person where he/she is from. Here you'll learn how to do that.

The question word どちら dochira and the particle から kara

どちら **dochira** literally means *which way* but is also used as a polite version of どこ **doko** (*where*). から **kara** is the particle that means *from*. If you are from Boston, you can say ボストンからです **Bosuton kara desu** (*I'm from Boston.*). To find out where a person is from, you can ask どちらからですか **Dochira kara desu ka** (*Where are you from?*).

Personal pronouns あなた anata, 私 watashi, and 僕 boku

When you are asking someone where he/she is from, you do not need to say あなた **anata** (*you*) because it would be obvious, unnatural, and sound like translation. Instead, you can say the name of the person you are talking to. For example, if you are talking to Ms. Hayashi, you can ask her **Hayashi-san wa dochira kara desu ka**, which means *Where are you from, Ms. Hayashi?* It is fine to use 私 **watashi** to refer to yourself. If you are a male, you may also use 僕 **boku** to refer to yourself.

Names for countries, regions, and cities

If someone asks you where you are from, you can answer the question with the name of a country, a region, or a city, depending on the context. The following are names of some countries, regions, and cities:

Australia
Beijing
California
Canada
Chile
China

オーストラリア
北京
カリフォルニア
カナダ
チリ
中国

Ōsutoraria
Pekin
Kariforunia
Kanada
Chiri
Chūgoku

England	イギリス	Igirisu
France	フランス	Furansu
Germany	ドイツ	Doitsu
Hong Kong	香港	Honkon
India	インド	Indo
Italy	イタリア	Itaria
Japan	日本	Nihon, Nippon
Kenya	ケニア	Kenia
Osaka	大阪	Ōsaka
Philippines	フィリピン	Firipin
Russia	ロシア	Roshia
Shanghai	上海	Shanghai
South Korea	韓国	Kankoku
Spain	スペイン	Supein
Taiwan	台湾	Taiwan
Thailand	タイ	Tai
United States of America	アメリカ	Amerika

EXERCISE

2-2

Ms. White asks Ms. Hayashi where she is from. Complete their conversation.

WHITE 林さんは _____ からですか。

Hayashi-san wa _____ kara desu ka.

HAYASHI 私は東京からです。

Watashi wa Tōkyō kara desu.

EXERCISE

2-3

Match the country names written in Japanese with their English equivalents.

1. 日本 **Nihon/Nippon** _____

a. Canada

2. アメリカ **Amerika** _____

b. China

3. 韓国 **Kankoku** _____

c. South Korea

4. 中国 **Chūgoku** _____

d. United States of America

5. カナダ **Kanada** _____

e. Japan

EXERCISE

2.4

Find nine country names in the puzzle, either vertically (top to bottom) or horizontally (left to right).

ウ	ワ	エ	ク	コ	セ
ル	ロ	サ	ス	フ	イ
カ	シ	イ	ペ	ク	タ
オ	ア	タ	イ	チ	リ
ナ	フ	ラ	ン	ス	ア
ケ	ニ	ア	ド	イ	ツ

EXERCISE

2.5

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. Meilin (メイリン **Meirin**) is from Beijing.

2. Yumiko (由美子 **Yumiko**) is from Tokyo.

3. Thomas (トーマス **Tōmasu**) is from Canada (カナダ **Kanada**).

4. Emily (エミリー **Emirī**) is from England (イギリス **Igirisu**).

EXERCISE

2.6

State where you are from in Japanese.

Describing the nationality of a person

Sometimes you want to be able to describe the nationality or language of another person. Here you will learn the proper form as well as the words for some nationalities and languages.

To say “x is y” with . . . は wa . . . です desu

When describing someone, the first step is to refer to that person and add the topic marker は **wa**, as you have already done in this chapter. For example, if you are talking about Ken, you say ケンさんは **Ken-san wa**. Then you say Ken’s nationality—for example, アメリカ人 **Amerika-jin** (*American*)—and add the copular verb です **desu**. For example:

ケンさんはアメリカ人です。
Ken-san wa Amerika-jin desu.
Ken is an American.

If you want say that someone is not a particular nationality, replace です **desu** with じゃありません **ja arimasen** or with じゃないです **ja nai desu**. For example:

ケンさんはアメリカ人じゃありません。
Ken-san wa Amerika-jin ja arimasen.
ケンさんはアメリカ人じゃないです。
Ken-san wa Amerika-jin ja nai desu.
Ken is not an American.

In a formal speech context or in writing, replace じゃ **ja** in these negative copular verbs with では **de wa**.

To express additional items with . . . も **mo**

If the same situation applies to another person, just use も **mo** to mark the additional person instead of using は **wa**. For example, ビルさんもアメリカ人です **Biru-san mo Amerika-jin desu** means *Bill is also an American*.

Nationality

To refer to a person’s nationality, use the country name and add 人 **jin** (*person*). The following are some examples:

<i>American (person)</i>	アメリカ人	Amerika-jin
<i>Chinese (person)</i>	中国人	Chūgoku-jin
<i>French (person)</i>	フランス人	Furansu-jin
<i>Japanese (person)</i>	日本人	Nihon-jin
<i>Korean (person)</i>	韓国人	Kankoku-jin
<i>Russian (person)</i>	ロシア人	Roshia-jin

Languages

To refer to a language, you add 語 **go** (*language*) after the country name (or region name):

<i>Arabic</i>	アラビア語	Arabia-go
<i>Cantonese Chinese</i>	広東語	Kanton-go
<i>Chinese</i>	中国語	Chūgoku-go
<i>English</i>	英語	Ei-go
<i>French</i>	フランス語	Furansu-go
<i>German</i>	ドイツ語	Doitsu-go
<i>Hindi</i>	ヒンディー語	Hindī-go
<i>Italian</i>	イタリア語	Itaria-go
<i>Korean</i>	韓国語	Kankoku-go
<i>Mandarin Chinese</i>	北京語	Pekin-go
<i>Russian</i>	ロシア語	Roshia-go
<i>Spanish</i>	スペイン語	Supein-go

EXERCISE

2-7

How do you say the following in Japanese?

1. an Italian (person) _____
2. a Canadian (person) _____
3. a Filipino (person) _____
4. an Indian (person) _____

EXERCISE

2-8

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. Takeshi (武さん **Takeshi-san**) is Japanese.

2. Heejeong (ヒージョンさん **Hijon-san**) is Korean.

3. Professor Brown (ブラウン先生 **Buraun sensei**) is a Canadian.

4. Mr. Chen (チェンさん **Chen-san**) is Chinese.

5. Meilin (メイリンさん **Meirin-san**) is also Chinese.

6. George (ジョージさん **Jōji-san**) is not an American.

EXERCISE

2-9

Describe yourself by stating where you are from and your nationality in Japanese.

Referring to someone with あの ano . . .

To refer to a person, the easiest way is to use the person's name. However, if you don't know the name of the person, but your conversational partner can actually see the person, you can use a demonstrative adjective and a common noun. For example, **あの人** **ano hito** means *that person over there*.

あの ano

To refer to a person you and your conversational partner can see, use a demonstrative adjective like **あの** **ano** (*that*) and a common noun like **人** **hito** (*person*) and **学生** **gakusei** (*student*). For example:

あの人はアメリカ人です

Ano hito wa Amerika-jin desu.

That person over there is an American.

Additional demonstrative adjectives are discussed later in this chapter.

Words for people

It is useful to know a common noun like **人** **hito** so you can refer to someone as *that person*, *that man*, or *that girl*. The following are some common nouns for people:

boy	男の子	otoko no ko
child	子ども	kodomo
girl	女の子	onna no ko
man	男の人	otoko no hito
person	人	hito
woman	女の人	onna no hito

EXERCISE

2・10

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. *That woman is Japanese.*

2. *That man is Chinese.*

3. *That person is Korean.*

4. *That child is French.*

Describing the occupation of a person

When you meet a person for the first time, you may want to talk about your job or where you work.

Creating a modifier using a noun and の no

To tell someone you are a student, you can say 学生 **gakusei** (*student*). But if you want to add what kind of student, add a word before it and mark it with the particle の **no**. For example, 日本語の学生 **nihongo no gakusei** means a *student of Japanese*.

Words for occupation

The following are some nouns for occupation:

doctor	医者	isha
lawyer	弁護士	bengoshi
nurse	看護師	kangoshi
store worker	店員	ten'in
student	学生	gakusei
teacher	先生 / 教師	sensei/kyōshi

When you are describing yourself or your family, use 教師 **kyōshi** instead of 先生 **sensei**.

EXERCISE

2-11

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. Mr. Mori (森さん **Mori-san**) is a lawyer.

2. That person is a Japanese student (a student who is studying the Japanese language).

3. That person is a Japanese student (a student whose nationality is Japanese).

4. That woman is a teacher.

5. That woman is a Japanese teacher (a teacher of the Japanese language).

Words for institutions

When you describe a person's occupation, you can say where the person works. For example, if someone is a high school teacher, you can say either 高校の先生です **Kōkō no sensei desu** (*He is a high school teacher*) or 高校で働いています **Kōkō de hataraitte imasu** (*He works at a high school*). The following is a list of types of institutions:

bank	銀行	ginkō
city hall	市役所	shiyakusho
company	会社	kaisha
department store	デパート	depāto
elementary school	小学校	shōgakkō
factory	工場	kōjō

<i>fire station</i>	消防署	<i>shōbōsho</i>
<i>graduate school</i>	大学院	<i>daigakuin</i>
<i>high school</i>	高校	<i>kōkō</i>
<i>hospital</i>	病院	<i>byōin</i>
<i>library</i>	図書館	<i>toshokan</i>
<i>middle school</i>	中学校	<i>chūgakkō</i>
<i>police station</i>	警察署	<i>keisatsusho</i>
<i>restaurant</i>	レストラン	<i>resutoran</i>
<i>school</i>	学校	<i>gakkō</i>
<i>university</i>	大学	<i>daigaku</i>

EXERCISE

2-12

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. ブラウンさんは高校の日本語の先生です。

Buraun-san wa kōkō no Nihongo no sensei desu.

2. 田中さんは自動車の工場で働いています。

Tanaka-san wa jidōsha no kōjō de hataraitte imasu.

(自動車 **jidōsha** means *automobile*)

3. マイクさんはデパートの店員です。

Maiku-san wa depāto no ten'in desu.

EXERCISE

2-13

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. Ms. Ishida (石田さん **Ishida-san**) is a college student.

2. Mr. Tani (谷さん **Tani-san**) works at a hospital.

3. Ms. Ueda (上田さん **Ueda-san**) is an English teacher at a high school in Japan.

Talking about family members

To refer to your own family members, use the plain forms. To refer to someone else's family members, use the polite forms. You can also use the polite forms for addressing your own family members who are older than you. (See Chapter 1 for how to address one's older family members.) The following table shows the plain forms and the polite forms you can use for referring to your close family members:

	PLAIN	POLITE
<i>father</i>	父 chichi	お父さん otōsan
<i>mother</i>	母 haha	お母さん okāsan
<i>older brother</i>	兄 ani	お兄さん onīsan
<i>older sister</i>	姉 ane	お姉さん onēsan
<i>younger brother</i>	弟 otōto	弟さん otōtosan
<i>younger sister</i>	妹 imōto	妹さん imōtosan

EXERCISE

2-14

Read the following passage, written by Sachiko, and answer the questions that follow.

私の父は中国人です。母は日本人です。父は東京の銀行で働いています。母は横浜の高校の英語の教師です。兄はアメリカの大学の経済学の学生です。

Watashi no chichi wa Chūgoku-jin desu. Haha wa Nihon-jin desu. Chichi wa Tōkyō no ginkō de hataraitte imasu. Haha wa Yokohama no kōkō no eigo no kyōshi desu. Ani wa Amerika no daigaku no keizaigaku no gakusei desu.

(経済学 **keizaigaku** means *economics*)

1. What is the nationality of Sachiko's father?

2. What is the nationality of Sachiko's mother?

3. What does her father do for living?

4. What does her mother do for living?

5. What does her brother do now?

For each of the following, choose the appropriate answer from the options in parentheses.

1. 山田さんの(姉, お姉さん)は看護師です。

Yamada-san no (ane, onēsan) wa kangoshi desu.

2. 私の(父, お父さん)はアメリカ人です。

Watashi no (chichi, otōsan) wa Amerika-jin desu.

3. あの人は(日本語, 日本人)です。

Ano hito wa (Nihon-go, Nihon-jin) desu.

4. 兄は(日本語の学生, 学生の日本語)です。

Ani wa (Nihon-go no gakusei, gakusei no Nihon-go) desu.

5. 私は(ケン, ケンさん)です。

Watashi wa (Ken, Ken-san) desu.

Asking questions

When asking a question in Japanese, you do not need to invert the subject and the verb. Here you learn how to ask and answer simple questions.

Asking yes/no questions

To ask a yes/no question, just add the question particle か **ka** at the end of the statement sentence. For example:

ケンさんはアメリカ人ですか。

Ken-san wa Amerika-jin desu ka.

Is Ken an American?

You don't need a question mark (?) in Japanese, although it is very frequently used.

Answering with “yes” or “no”

The answer to a yes/no question usually starts with はい **hai** or いいえ **ie**. はい **hai** means *correct* or *right*, so if the question is an affirmative question, it means *yes*. いいえ **ie** means *wrong*, so if the question is an affirmative question, it means *no*. Their meanings are reversed in answering negative questions.

The following are possible replies to the affirmative question ケンさんはアメリカ人ですか **Ken-san wa Amerika-jin desu ka** (*Are you an American, Ken?*):

はい, アメリカ人です。

Hai, Amerika-jin desu.

Yes, I'm an American.

いいえ, アメリカ人じゃありません。

Īe, Amerika-jin ja arimasen.

No, I'm not an American.

The following are possible replies to the negative question **これはいりませんか Kore wa irimasen ka** (*Don't you need this?*):

はい, いりません。

Hai, irimasen.

Right, I don't need it. (No, I don't need it.)

いいえ, います。

Īe, irimasu.

Wrong, I need it. (Yes, I need it.)

(See Chapter 4 for the verb ending **ます masu** and **ません masen**.)

As you can see, it is very common to omit understood phrases or pronouns in Japanese in replies.

Asking “who?”

To ask “who?” use the question word **だれ dare** or its polite version, **どなた donata**. For example:

あの人はだれですか。

Ano hito wa dare desu ka.

Who is that person?

The topic particle **は wa** cannot be used for question words, so never say **だれは dare wa** or **どなたは donata wa**.

EXERCISE

2-16

Reorder the items in each set to form a grammatical sentence and then translate it.

1. です **desu**, 私 **watashi**, 学生 **gakusei**, は **wa**

2. 母 **haha**, 看護師 **kangoshi**, は **wa**, です **desu**

3. 中国人 **Chūgoku-jin**, は **wa**, じゃありません **ja arimasen**, チェンさん **Chen-san**

4. 韓国人 **Kankoku-jin**, です **desu**, は **wa**, の **no**, お母さん **okāsan**, チェンさん **Chen-san**

5. 人 **hito**, あの **ano**, です **desu**, は **wa**, か **ka**, だれ **dare**

6. 山田さん **Yamada-san**, 人 **hito**, あの **ano**, 妹さん **imōtosan**, です **desu**, は **wa**, の **no**

EXERCISE

2·17

Read the following passage and state whether each of the sentences that follows is true or false.

チェンさんは私の友達です。チェンさんは中国人です。日本語の学生です。チェンさんのお母さんは看護師です。チェンさんのお父さんは英語の先生です。チェンさんのお兄さんは東京の広告の会社の社員です。

Chen-san wa watashi no tomodachi desu. Chen-san wa Chūgoku-jin desu. Nihon-go no gakusei desu. Chen-san no okāsan wa kangoshi desu. Chen-san no otōsan wa eigo no sensei desu. Chen-san no onīsan wa Tōkyō no kōkoku no kaisha no shain desu.

(... 広告 **kōkoku** means *advertisement*; の社員 **no shain** means *company employee* at ...)

1. (True, False): Mr. Chen is a Chinese person.
2. (True, False): Mr. Chen's father works for an automobile company.
3. (True, False): Mr. Chen's mother is a nurse.
4. (True, False): Mr. Chen's older brother is an English teacher.

EXERCISE

2·18

Describe yourself and your family members as much as you can in Japanese.

Two girls, Mika and Alison, are talking. Complete their conversation with the appropriate words.

MIKA アリソンさんはアメリカ人ですか。

Arison-san wa Amerika-jin desu ka.

ALISON _____, 私はアメリカ人です。

_____, **watashi wa Amerika-jin desu.**

でも母はアメリカ人じゃ _____。

Demo haha wa Amerika-jin ja _____.

フランス人です。

Furansu-jin desu.

父はアメリカ人です。

Chichi wa Amerika-jin desu.

MIKA ああ, そうですか。

Ā, sō desu ka.

(でも **demo** means *however*; ああ, そうですか。 **Ā, sō desu ka.** means *Oh, I see.*)

Greeting and parting

After you have already met someone for the first time, you use a different greeting than you used upon meeting. You use different forms for greetings depending on the time of day. What you say to a person in parting depends on a number of factors, such as time of day and whether you will see the person again soon.

Greeting

To greet someone in the morning, say おはようございます **Ohayō gozaimasu!** (*Good morning!*). To a close friend or family member, you can just say おはよう **Ohayō!** (*Good morning!*). If it's in the afternoon, say こんにちは **Konnichi wa!**, which means *Good afternoon!* or *Hi!* In the evening, say こんにちは **Konban wa!** (*Good evening!*).

Parting

When you part, you can say じゃあ, また **Jā, mata!** (*See you later!*). If you know that you'll see the person again on the same day or soon, you can say the location and add the particle で **de**, as in じゃあ, またクラスで **Jā, mata kurasu de!** (*I'll see you later in class!*). If it is later in the day and you are unlikely to see the person again on the same day, you may add さようなら **Sayōnara!** (*Bye!*). If you are parting from someone to whom you need to show your respect, you should say しつれいします。 **Shitsurei shimasu.**, which literally translates to *I'll be rude* but actually means that you are leaving. The Japanese do not say さようなら **Sayōnara** to their family. When they leave home in the morning, they say 行ってきます **Itte kimasu!**, which literally means *I'll go and come back.*

EXERCISE

2·20

Write a Japanese sentence of greeting or parting for each of the following situations.

1. It's 10 AM. You see your teacher at the library.

2. You've just woken up and seen your mother in the kitchen.

3. It's 9 AM and you are about to leave your home for work. Your mother is sending you off.

4. It's 5 PM. You talked with your teacher in her office for 15 minutes. You are ready to leave.

EXERCISE

2·21

Jane Smith sees Professor Hayashi at the library in the morning. Complete their conversation with the appropriate words.

- SMITH 林先生, _____。
Hayashi sensei, _____.
- HAYASHI ああ, ジェーンさん。おはよう。
Ā, Jēn-san. Ohayō.
- SMITH じゃあ, またクラスで。_____ します。
Jā, mata kurasu de. _____ **shimasu.**
- HAYASHI はい。じゃあ, また。
Hai. Jā, mata.

Thanking and apologizing

You commonly need to thank people and apologize to them—as well as respond to thanks and apologies. How you do it depends on your relationship.

Saying “thank you”

To thank someone, say ありがとうございます **Arigatō gozaimasu**. To thank deeply, you can add the adverb どうも **dōmo** at the beginning, as in どうもありがとうございます。 **Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu**. Never say the short version ありがとう **Arigatō** to anyone except your family, subordinate, or very close friends. On the other hand, you can always say just どうも **Dōmo** to thank anyone without sounding rude. In any case, it is a good idea to slightly bow as you say these phrases.

Common responses to such phrases of appreciation include いいえ **Īe** (*No [problem]*) and どういたしまして **Dō itashimashite** (*You're welcome*).

Apologizing

To apologize, say すみません **Sumimasen** or どうもすみません **Dōmo sumimasen**. You can also say a slightly informal version, ごめんなさい **Gomennasai**, to your family members or close friends.

To respond to apology, you can just respond with いいえ **Īe**, meaning *no need to apologize*, if the apology is for something not serious. If the apology is for something rather serious, you can respond to it with はい **hai**, meaning that you'll accept his/her apology.

EXERCISE

2-22

What would you say in Japanese in the following situations?

1. You accidentally pushed the person in front of you in a bus.

2. Your neighbor brought homemade cake to your house.

3. You are talking with your Japanese teacher and just realized that you forgot to do your homework that was due today.

4. Your friend just thanked you for helping her carry the big package.

5. Your friend just stepped on your foot and apologized to you.

EXERCISE

2-23

George accidentally stepped on a woman's foot in a bus. Read their dialog and choose the appropriate answer from the options in parentheses.

GEORGE あ, すみません。

A, sumimasen.

A WOMAN (はい, いいえ)。

(Hai, Īe).

GEORGE だいじょうぶですか。

Daijōbu desu ka.

A WOMAN はい, だいじょうぶです。

Hai, daijōbu desu.

(だいじょうぶ **daijōbu** means *all right*)

George forgot to do his homework and apologizes to his teacher. Read their dialog and choose the appropriate answer from the options in parentheses.

GEORGE 先生, どうもすみません。

Sensei, dōmo sumimasen.

TEACHER (はい, いいえ)。気をつけてくださいね。

(Hai, ĩe). Ki o tsukete kudasai ne.

GEORGE はい。

Hai.

(気をつけてくださいね。 **Ki o tsukete kudasai ne.** means *Be careful, okay?*)

Referring to things around you

You can refer to things you and your conversation partner can see by using demonstrative adjectives along with a common noun such as 本 **hon** (*book*) or by using a demonstrative pronoun such as これ **kore** (*this one*), それ **sore** (*that one near you*), or あれ **are** (*that one over there*).

Demonstrative adjectives

When referring to an item that is close to you, use この **kono**, as in この本 **kono hon** (*this book*). If it is not close to you but close to your conversation partner, use その **sono**, as in その本 **sono hon** (*that book near you*). If far from both you and your conversation partner, use あの **ano**, as in あの本 **ano hon** (*that book over there*).

Things around you

The following are some common nouns for things around you:

book	本	hon
bag	かばん	kaban
camera	カメラ	kamera
car	車	kuruma
cell phone	携帯	keitai
chair	椅子	isu
computer, PC	パソコン	pasokon
desk	机	tsukue
eyeglasses	めがね	megane
key	鍵	kagi
notebook	ノート	nōto
pen	ペン	pen
sunglasses	サングラス	sangurasu
umbrella	傘	kasa
wallet	財布	saifu

Demonstrative pronouns これ **kore**, それ **sore**, and あれ **are**

When your conversation partner will know what noun you're referring to, you don't have to say the common noun but can use demonstrative pronouns, これ **kore** (*this one*), それ **sore** (*that one near you*), and あれ **are** (*that one over there*) except when you're referring to people.

When referring to people, do not use demonstrative pronouns but always use a demonstrative adjective along with a common noun—for example, *あの人* **ano hito** (*that person over there*). To make it sound polite, you can use *方* **kata** to mean *person*, after a demonstrative adjective. For example:

あの方は田中先生です。
Ano kata wa Tanaka sensei desu.
That person over there is Professor Tanaka.

EXERCISE

2-25

For each of the following, choose the correct answer from the options in parentheses.

1. (あれ, あ)は谷さんのかばんです。

(Are, Ano) wa Tani-san no kaban desu.

2. (これ, この)車はドイツの車です。

(Kore, Kono) kuruma wa Doitsu no kuruma desu.

3. 私のパソコンは(それ, その)です。

Watashi no pasokon wa (sore, sono) desu.

4. (あの人, あれ)は田中さんです。

(Ano hito, Are) wa Tanaka-san desu.

EXERCISE

2-26

For each of the following, choose the correct answer from the options in parentheses.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. 鍵 kagi | (wallet, key, umbrella) |
| 2. 財布 saifu | (wallet, key, umbrella) |
| 3. サングラス sangurasu | (sandwich, eyeglasses, notebook, sunglasses) |
| 4. パソコン pasokon | (computer, pen, camera, bread) |

Asking “which?” “what?” and “whose?”

Sometimes to determine what particular item someone is talking about, you need to ask questions using a question word like *which item*, *what item*, and *whose item*. Remember that question words cannot be marked by the topic particle は **wa**.

The question word どの **dono** or どれ **dore** (*which*)

When you want to ask *which* or *which one*, you can say どの **dono** or どれ **dore**, as in:

どの本ですか。
Dono hon desu ka.
Which book is it?

どれですか。
Dore desu ka.
Which one is it?

Like この **kono**, その **sono**, and あの **ano**, どの **dono** must be followed by a noun.

The question word 何 **nani/nan** (*what*)

To ask *what*, use 何, which is read as **nani** by itself but as **nan** when followed by です **desu**, as in 何ですか **nan desu ka**. For example:

これは何ですか。
Kore wa nan desu ka.
What is this?

The question word だれの **dare no** (*whose*)

To ask *whose*, say だれの **dare no**, which is だれ **dare** plus the particle の **no**. After the particle の **no**, you can drop the common noun if understood. For example:

これはだれの本ですか。
Kore wa dare no hon desu ka.
Whose book is this?

これはだれのですか。
Kore wa dare no desu ka.
Whose is this?

EXERCISE

2-27

Translate the following short dialogs into English.

1. A: これはだれの傘ですか。

Kore wa dare no kasa desu ka.

- B: それはケンさんの傘です。

Sore wa Ken-san no kasa desu.

2. A: あれはだれのですか。

Are wa dare no desu ka.

- B: あれはジェーンさんのです。

Are wa Jēn-san no desu.

3. A: あの車はだれの車ですか。

Ano kuruma wa dare no kuruma desu ka.

B: あれは田中さんのです。

Are wa Tanaka-san no desu.

4. A: スミスさんのはどれですか。

Sumisu-san no wa dore desu ka.

B: あれです。

Are desu.

5. A: あの車は何ですか。

Ano kuruma wa nan desu ka.

B: あれはトヨタのカローラです。

Are wa Toyota no Karōra desu.

EXERCISE

2-28

For each of the following, choose the correct answer from the options in parentheses.

1. (これ, この)車は日本の車です。

(Kore, Kono) kuruma wa Nihon no kuruma desu.

2. 私のは(それ, その)です。

Watashi no wa (sore, sono) desu.

3. A: それは何ですか。

Sore wa nan desu ka.

B: (これ, それ)はカメラです。

(Kore, sore) wa kamera desu.

4. あの人は(だれ, 何)ですか。

Ano hito wa (dare, nan) desu ka.

5. これは(だれ, 何)ですか。

Kore wa (dare, nan) desu ka.

6. それは(山田さん, 山田さんの)ですか。

Sore wa (Yamada-san, Yamada-san no) desu ka.

EXERCISE

2-29

Reorder the items in each set to create a grammatical sentence.

1. 本 **hon**, 父 **chichi**, あれ **are**, の **no**, は **wa**, です **desu**

2. これ **kore**, です **desu**, 私 **watashi**, は **wa**, の **no**

3. だれ **dare**, あの **ano**, 学生 **gakusei**, か **ka**, は **wa**, です **desu**

4. 何 **nan**, それ **sore**, は **wa**, です **desu**, か **ka**

5. ケンさん **Ken-san**, どれ **dore**, は **wa**, です **desu**, か **ka**, の **no**

EXERCISE

2-30

One rainy day, many umbrellas are in the classroom. Yukiko and George are trying to figure out which one is whose. Complete their conversation as appropriate.

YUKIKO ジョージさん。これはジョージさんの傘ですか。

Jōji-san. Kore wa Jōji-san no kasa desu ka.

GEORGE いいえ、僕のじゃありません。田中さんのです。

Īe, boku no ja arimasen. Tanaka-san no desu.

YUKIKO ああ、そうですか。

Ā, sō desu ka.

GEORGE 僕のはこれです。雪子さんののは _____ ですか。

Boku no wa kore desu. Yukiko-san no wa _____ desu ka.

YUKIKO 私のはあれです。

Watashi no wa are desu.

GEORGE じゃあ、それはだれの傘ですか。

Jā, sore wa dare no kasa desu ka.

YUKIKO _____ は奈々子さんのです。

_____ **wa Nanako-san no desu.**

3

Using numbers

This chapter introduces Japanese number systems and many situations where you need to use numbers. You will learn how to speak about time-related concepts, such as ages, calendar dates, and holidays. You will also learn how to ask and answer questions such as “how much?” and “how many?”

Numbers from 1 to 10

There are two number systems in Japanese: the Chinese system and the native Japanese system. The native Japanese system is a native numeral plus the native counter っ **tsu**. It is frequently used, and it only goes up to 10 in modern Japanese.

The Chinese system is predominantly used in business/administrative/academic contexts. However, **shi** (*four*) and **shichi** (*seven*) in the Chinese system are often replaced by **yon** and **nana** in the native Japanese system. In fact, **shi**, **shichi**, and **ku** (a variation of **kyū**) are used only in reciting numerals, such as when quickly counting or doing physical exercises.

Numbers are written as Arabic numerals most of the time in business/administrative/academic contexts, but they may be written in kanji. The following table shows the Arabic numeral, the kanji, the pronunciation in the Chinese system, and the pronunciation in the native Japanese system for the numbers 1 through 10:

Arabic Numeral	Kanji	Chinese System	Native Japanese System
1	一	いち ichi	ひとつ hitotsu
2	二	に ni	ふたつ futatsu
3	三	さん san	みっつ mittsu
4	四	し shi (or よん yon)	よっつ yottsu
5	五	ご go	いつつ itsutsu
6	六	ろく roku	むっつ muttsu
7	七	しち shichi (or なな nana)	ななつ nanatsu
8	八	はち hachi	やっつ yattsu
9	九	きゅう kyū (or く ku)	ここのつ kokonotsu
10	十	じゅう jū	とお tō

EXERCISE

3-1

Read the sequence of the numbers in the Chinese system from 1 to 10 until you memorize it.

いち, に, さん, し, ご, ろく, しち, はち, きゅう, じゅう
 ichi, ni, san, shi, go, roku, shichi, hachi, kyū, jū

EXERCISE

3-2

Read the sequence of the numbers in the native Japanese system from 1 to 10 until you memorize it.

ひとつ, ふたつ, みっつ, よっつ, ひとつ, むっつ, ななつ, やっつ, ここのつ, とお
 hitotsu, futatsu, mittsu yottsu, itsutsu, muttsu, nanatsu, yattsu, kokonotsu, tō

EXERCISE

3-3

What is your favorite number? Say it in Japanese in the two systems.

Numbers from 11 to 99

The native Japanese number system goes only through 10 in modern Japanese, so beyond that, Japanese use the Chinese system. In the Chinese system, the numbers from 11 to 19 are compound words consisting of **jū** (*ten*) plus one of the other digits. For example, 12 is **jū-ni**. The even tens (*twenty, thirty, forty*, etc.) are compound words consisting of one of the numbers plus **jū** (*ten*). For example, 20 is **ni-jū**. Beyond 20, you use the word for the even ten plus the other digit. As you would expect, 23 is **ni-jū-san**, and 99 is **kyū-jū-kyū**.

EXERCISE

3-4

Read the sequence of the numbers from 11 to 20 aloud.

じゅういち, じゅうに, じゅうさん, じゅうし, じゅうご, じゅうろく, じゅうしち, じゅうはち,
 じゅうく, にじゅう
 jū-ichi, jū-ni, jū-san, jū-shi, jū-go, jū-roku, jū-shichi, jū-hachi, jū-ku, ni-jū

Note: Alternative pronunciations for 14, 17, and 19 are じゅうよん **jū-yon**, じゅうなな **jū-nana**, and じゅうきゅう **jū-kyū**.

Write the following numbers in hiragana or romaji.

1. 15 _____
2. 38 _____
3. 56 _____
4. 77 _____
5. 89 _____

Numbers from 100 to 99,999

The following table shows the multiples of 100, 1,000, and 10,000. Notice some sound changes with the multiples of 100 (**hyaku**, **byaku**, and **pyaku**) and 1,000 (**sen** and **zen**).

100	ひゃく hyaku	1,000	せん sen	10,000	いちまん ichi-man
200	にひゃく ni-hyaku	2,000	にせん ni-sen	20,000	にまん ni-man
300	さんびゃく san-byaku	3,000	さんぜん san-zen	30,000	さんまん san-man
400	よんひゃく yon-hyaku	4,000	よんせん yon-sen	40,000	よんまん yon-man
500	ごひゃく go-hyaku	5,000	ごせん go-sen	50,000	ごまん go-man
600	ろっぴゃく rop-pyaku	6,000	ろくせん roku-sen	60,000	ろくまん roku-man
700	ななひゃく nana-hyaku	7,000	ななせん nana-sen	70,000	ななまん nana-man
800	はっぴゃく hap-pyaku	8,000	はっせん has-sen	80,000	はちまん hachi-man
900	きゅうひゃく kyū-hyaku	9,000	きゅうせん kyū-sen	90,000	きゅうまん kyū-man

EXERCISE

3.6

Write the following numbers in hiragana or romaji and then pronounce them a few times each.

1. 22,222 _____
2. 33,333 _____
3. 66,666 _____
4. 88,888 _____
5. 99,999 _____

EXERCISE

3.7

Write the following numbers in hiragana or romaji.

1. 19,800 _____
2. 44,771 _____
3. 56,525 _____

Expressing age with the counter 歳 sai

To express a person's age, you add 歳 **sai** after the numeral in the Chinese system. For example, 15 歳 **jū-go-sai** means *15 years old*. You can express the age of a young child by using the native Japanese system also. For example, みっつ **mittsu** means *3 years old*. To ask someone his age, say 何歳ですか **Nan-sai desu ka** (*How old are you?*). For elderly people, you can ask おいくつですか **O-ikutsu desu ka** (*How old are you?*) to sound polite. When **sai** is combined with certain numerals, it causes some sound change, as you can see:

1 歳	2 歳	3 歳	4 歳	5 歳	6 歳	7 歳	8 歳	9 歳	10 歳
いっさい	にさい	さんさい	よんさい	ごさい	ろくさい	ななさい	はっさい	きゅうさい	じゅっさい or じっさい
is-sai	ni-sai	san-sai	yon-sai	go-sai	roku-sai	nana-sai	has-sai	kyū-sai	jus-sai or jis-sai

EXERCISE

3.8

Read the previous table three times aloud.

EXERCISE

3・9

How old are you? Say it in Japanese.

EXERCISE

3・10

Write your grandparents' ages in Japanese.

Telephone numbers

The word for *telephone number* is 電話番号 **denwa-bangō**. Telephone numbers are expressed using the Chinese number system. However, use れい **rei** or ゼロ **zero** (from the English word *zero*) for zero. Use よん **yon** for *four* and なな **nana** for *seven*. To ask someone's telephone number, say the person's name and add の電話番号は何ですか **no denwa-bangō wa nan desu ka**. For example:

山田さんの電話番号は何ですか。

Yamada-san no denwa-bangō wa nan desu ka.

What is your phone number, Ms. Yamada?

For asking someone else's phone number, you can use わかりますか **wakarimasu ka** at the end, as in:

吉川さんの電話番号はわかりますか。

Yoshikawa-san no denwa-bangō wa wakarimasu ka.

Do you know Mr. Yoshikawa's telephone number?

EXERCISE

3・11

Read the following sentences aloud, paying attention to the pronunciation of the telephone numbers.

1. 東京の山田さんの電話番号は 03-5272-4353 です。

Tōkyō no Yamada-san no denwa-bangō wa zero-san go-ni-nana-ni yon-san-go-san desu.

2. 大阪の石田さんの電話番号は 06-6459-1507 です。

Ōsaka no Ishida-san no denwa-bangō wa zero-roku roku-yon-go-kyū ichi-go-zero-nana desu.

3. 名古屋の大川さんの電話番号は 052-459-0281 です。

Nagoya no Ōkawa-san no denwa-bangō wa zero-go-ni yon-go-kyū zero-ni-hachi-ichi desu.

EXERCISE

3-12

Write your telephone number in Arabic numerals and say it in Japanese 10 times.

EXERCISE

3-13

Write the cell phone numbers of your family members in Arabic numerals and say them three times each in Japanese.

EXERCISE

3-14

Jerry asks Yukiko some questions. Read their conversation and indicate what the underlined parts mean.

JERRY すみません。雪子さんの電話番号は何ですか。

Sumimasen. Yukiko-san no denwa-bangō wa nan desu ka.

YUKIKO 携帯は 918-332-3322 です。うちは 052-555-7766 です。

Keitai wa kyū-ichi-hachi san-san-ni san-san-ni-ni desu. Uchi wa zero-go-ni go-go-go nana-nana-roku-roku desu.

JERRY ああ、そうですか。どうも。

Ā, sō desu ka. Dōmo.

それから順子さんの電話番号はわかりますか。

Sorekara Junko-san no denwa-bangō wa wakarimasu ka.

YUKIKO 1. ちょっとわかりません。

1. **Chotto wakarimasen.**

JERRY ああ, そうですか。2. じゃあ, いいです。

Ā, sō desu ka. 2. Jā, ii desu.

1. _____

2. _____

Telling time

Time-related expressions include absolute time expressions that specify the time that you can point at on a calendar or on a clock—for example, *June 2*, *4 PM*, etc.—and relative time expressions, such as *now*, *tomorrow*, and *last month*. In addition, Japanese has many words that refer to specific time periods in a day.

Counters for time: 時 **ji** and 分 **fun**

The following list shows how time is expressed in Japanese. Pay special attention to irregular pronunciations.

1 時 ichi-ji 1 o'clock	1 分 ip-pun 1 minute
2 時 ni-ji 2 o'clock	2 分 ni-fun 2 minutes
3 時 san-ji 3 o'clock	3 分 san-pun 3 minutes
4 時 yo-ji 4 o'clock	4 分 yon-pun 4 minutes
5 時 go-ji 5 o'clock	5 分 go-fun 5 minutes
6 時 roku-ji 6 o'clock	6 分 rop-pun 6 minutes
7 時 shichi-ji 7 o'clock	7 分 nana-fun 7 minutes
8 時 hachi-ji 8 o'clock	8 分 hap-pun (hachi-fun) 8 minutes
9 時 ku-ji 9 o'clock	9 分 kyū-fun 9 minutes
10 時 jū-ji 10 o'clock	10 分 jup-pun (jip-pun) 10 minutes
11 時 jū-ichi-ji 11 o'clock	15 分 jū-go-fun 15 minutes
12 時 jū-ni-ji 12 o'clock	30 分 san-jup-pun 30 minutes

Add 午前 **gozen** (AM) and 午後 **gogo** (PM) before the time phrase. A half an hour (30 minutes) can be expressed by 半 **han**. For example:

午前2時15分 **gozen ni-ji jū-go-fun** (2:15 AM)
午後3時30分 **gogo san-ji san-jup-pun** (3:30 PM)
午前2時半 **gozen ni-ji han** (2:30 AM)

Use the particle に **ni** after a time phrase to express the time of an event. For example:

7時におきました。
Shichi-ji ni okimashita.
I woke up at 7 AM.

Relative time expressions

You use relative time expressions to specify time relative to the current moment, such as *tomorrow* or *last year*. The following list shows some common relative time expressions:

<i>last month</i>	先月	sengetsu
<i>last week</i>	先週	senshū

<i>last year</i>	去年	kyonen
<i>next month</i>	来月	raigetsu
<i>next week</i>	来週	raishū
<i>next year</i>	来年	rainen
<i>now</i>	今	ima
<i>this month</i>	今月	kongetsu
<i>this morning</i>	今朝	kesa
<i>this week</i>	今週	konshū
<i>this year</i>	今年	kotoshi
<i>today</i>	今日	kyō
<i>tomorrow</i>	あした／明日	ashita/asu (myōnichi)
<i>tonight</i>	今晚	konban
<i>yesterday</i>	昨日	kinō/sakujitsu

Daily time frames

Based on the combination of the absolute time and the position of the sun, a day can be divided into at least eight time frames, as shown in the following list. Here you can see that 午後 **gogo** can mean both *PM* and *afternoon*.

<i>A few hours before sunrise</i>	明け方	akegata
<i>A few hours after sunrise</i>	朝	asa
<i>Between a few hours after sunrise and noon</i>	午前中	gozenchū
<i>From noon to 1 PM</i>	昼	hiru
<i>Between 1 PM and a few hours before sunset</i>	午後	gogo
<i>A few hours before sunset</i>	夕方	yūgata
<i>After sunset and before midnight</i>	晩	ban
<i>After midnight and before sunrise</i>	真夜中	mayonaka

EXERCISE

3-15

Complete the following dialog between Mike and a stranger at a train station.

MIKE すみません。今、1. _____ ですか。
Sumimasen. Ima, 1. _____ desu ka.

Excuse me. What time it is now?

A MAN 今、2時25分です。
Ima, ni-ji ni-jū-go-fun desu.

It's 2:25 now.

MIKE ああ、そうですか。2. _____。
Ā, sō desu ka. 2. _____.

Oh, I see. Thank you.

A MAN いいえ。
Īe.

No problem.

EXERCISE

3-16

Complete the conversation between Akiko and Takeshi.

AKIKO 武さん。今日は 1. _____ おきましたか。

Takeshi-san. Kyō wa 1. _____ okimashita ka.

Takeshi. What time did you wake up today?

TAKESHI 今日は 2. _____ おきました。

Kyō wa 2. _____ okimashita.

I woke up at 8 o'clock today.

EXERCISE

3-17

Mr. Tanaka is going to Boston tomorrow for a conference. Complete the conversation between him and Ms. Ueda.

MS. UEDA 田中さん。あしたのボストンへの飛行機は何時ですか。

Tanaka-san. Ashita no Boston e no hikōki wa nan-ji desu ka.

What time is the flight for Boston tomorrow, Mr. Tanaka?

MR. TANAKA 1. _____ です。

1. _____ **desu.**

It's at 6:35 AM.

MS. UEDA ああ、そうですか。会議は何時からですか。

Ā, sō desu ka. Kaigi wa nan-ji kara desu ka.

Oh, I see. What time will the conference start?

MR. TANAKA 2. _____ からです。

2. _____ **kara desu.**

It starts at 1 PM.

MS. UEDA ああ、そうですか。

Ā, sō desu ka.

Oh, I see.

MR. TANAKA 夕方にはニューヨークに戻ります。

Yūgata ni wa Nyū Yōku ni modorimasu.

I'll return to New York by early evening.

The calendar

To refer to a specific day, you can combine the name of the day in a week, the name of the month, the name of the date in the month, and the name of the year. Unlike in English, the names of months include numerals in Japanese. This section shows you how to combine these names to refer to a specific day in Japanese.

Days of the week

The following list shows how to express the days of the week in Japanese:

<i>Sunday</i>	日曜日	Nichiyōbi
<i>Monday</i>	月曜日	Getsuyōbi
<i>Tuesday</i>	火曜日	Kayōbi
<i>Wednesday</i>	水曜日	Suiyōbi
<i>Thursday</i>	木曜日	Mokuyōbi
<i>Friday</i>	金曜日	Kinyōbi
<i>Saturday</i>	土曜日	Doyōbi

Months

The following list shows how to express the months in Japanese:

<i>January</i>	1月	Ichi-gatsu
<i>February</i>	2月	Ni-gatsu
<i>March</i>	3月	San-gatsu
<i>April</i>	4月	Shi-gatsu
<i>May</i>	5月	Go-gatsu
<i>June</i>	6月	Roku-gatsu
<i>July</i>	7月	Shichi-gatsu
<i>August</i>	8月	Hachi-gatsu
<i>September</i>	9月	Ku-gatsu
<i>October</i>	10月	Jū-gatsu
<i>November</i>	11月	Jūichi-gatsu
<i>December</i>	12月	Jūni-gatsu

Days of the month

The days of the month are very difficult to learn because the first 10 days are not systematic. As the following list shows, most of the days after the 10th follow an easily learned pattern:

<i>1st</i>	1日	tsuitachi
<i>2nd</i>	2日	futsuka
<i>3rd</i>	3日	mikka
<i>4th</i>	4日	yokka
<i>5th</i>	5日	itsuka
<i>6th</i>	6日	muika
<i>7th</i>	7日	nanoka
<i>8th</i>	8日	yōka
<i>9th</i>	9日	kokonoka
<i>10th</i>	10日	tōka
<i>11th</i>	11日	jūichi-nichi
<i>12th</i>	12日	jūni-nichi
<i>13th</i>	13日	jūsan-nichi
<i>14th</i>	14日	jūyokka
<i>15th</i>	15日	jūgo-nichi

16th	16日	jūroku-nichi
17th	17日	jūshichi-nichi
18th	18日	jūhachi-nichi
19th	19日	jūku-nichi
20th	20日	hatsuka
21st	21日	nijū ichi-nichi
22nd	22日	nijū ni-nichi
23rd	23日	nijū san-nichi
24th	24日	nijū yokka
25th	25日	nijū go-nichi
26th	26日	nijū roku-nichi
27th	27日	nijū shichi-nichi
28th	28日	nijū hachi-nichi
29th	29日	nijū ku-nichi
30th	30日	sanjū-nichi
31st	31日	sanjūichi-nichi

Years are expressed using the Western system, with the counter 年 **-nen**, as in 2013年 **ni-sen-jū-san-nen** (2013), or using the Japanese system, with 年号 **nengō** (era name) and the counter **-nen**, as in 平成25年 **Heisei ni-jū-go-nen** (Heisei 25, 2013). A new **nengō** is created every time a new emperor ascends the throne in Japan and continues to be used until a different emperor takes his place. For example, a date can be written as:

2013年12月14日 土曜日

(Pronunciation: **ni-sen-jū-san-nen jū-ni-gatsu jū-yokka Doyōbi**)

Saturday, December 14th, 2013

EXERCISE

3-18

Specify the following in Japanese.

1. Monday _____
2. April 1st _____
3. 9 PM _____
4. 2:30 AM _____
5. 1998 _____

Asking “when?”

Here you’ll learn how to ask “when?” appropriately depending on the context. You’ll also learn major Japanese holidays.

Question word いつ **itsu** (*when*)

Use いつ **itsu** to ask “when?” You do not need to place a particle after いつ **itsu**. However, to ask more specific question, you can use expressions like 何時 **nan-ji** (*what o'clock*), 何分 **nan-pun** (*what minute*), 何曜日 **nan-yōbi** (*what day of a week*), 何月 **nan-gatsu** (*what month*), 何年 **nan-nen** (*what year*), 何日 **nan-nichi** (*what date*), etc., along with the particle に **ni**.

For example:

今、何時ですか。

Ima nan-ji desu ka.

What time is it now?

今日は何曜日ですか。

Kyō wa nan-yōbi desu ka.

What day is it today?

Japanese national holidays

The following table lists some of Japan’s national holidays. Can you state which date each of the national holiday is in Japanese?

English Translation	Date	Japanese	Romaji
<i>New Year’s Day</i>	1月 1日	元日	Ganjitsu
<i>Coming-of-Age Day</i>	Second Monday of January	成人の日	Seijin no hi
<i>National Foundation Day</i>	2月 11日	建国記念日	Kenkoku-kinen-bi
<i>Vernal Equinox Day</i>	Around 3月 20日	春分の日	Shunbun no hi
<i>Showa Day</i>	4月 29日	昭和の日	Shōwa no hi
<i>Constitution Memorial Day</i>	5月 3日	憲法記念日	Kenpō kinenbi
<i>Greenery Day</i>	5月 4日	緑の日	Midori no hi
<i>Children’s Day</i>	5月 5日	こどもの日	Kodomo no hi
<i>Ocean Day</i>	Third Monday of July	海の日	Umi no hi
<i>Respect-for-the-Aged Day</i>	Third Monday of September	敬老の日	Keirō no hi
<i>Autumnal Equinox Day</i>	Around 9 月 23日	秋分の日	Shūbun no hi
<i>Health and Sports Day</i>	Second Monday of October	体育の日	Taiiku no hi
<i>Culture Day</i>	11月 3日	文化の日	Bunka no hi
<i>Labor Thanksgiving Day</i>	11月 23日	勤労感謝の日	Kinrō-kansha no hi
<i>Emperor’s Birthday</i>	12月 23日	天皇誕生日	Tennō tanjōbi

EXERCISE

3-19

Answer the following questions in Japanese.

1. 子どもの日はいつですか。

Kodomo no hi wa itsu desu ka.

When is the Children's Day?

2. バレンタインデーはいつですか。

Barentain Dē wa itsu desu ka.

When is Valentine's Day?

EXERCISE

3-20

Answer the following questions in Japanese based on the fact.

1. 今, 何月ですか。

Ima, nan-gatsu desu ka.

What month is it now?

2. 先月は何月でしたか。

Sengetsu wa nan-gatsu deshita ka.

What month was it last month?

3. 来月は何月ですか。

Raigetsu wa nan-gatsu desu ka.

What month is it next month?

4. 今日は何月何日ですか。

Kyō wa nan-gatsu nan-nichi desu ka.

What month and date is it today?

5. あしたは何日ですか。

Ashita wa nan-nichi desu ka.

What date is it tomorrow?

Answer the following questions about yourself in Japanese.

1. 何年に生まれましたか。

Nan-nen ni umare mashita ka.

Which year were you born in?

2. 誕生日はいつですか。

Tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.

When is your birthday?

Asking “how much?” at a store

When you want to purchase something in a store, you need to know how to ask “how much?” along with the name of the item you want. You also need to know how to say which item or items you would like to purchase.

Things you might buy at an electronics store

Examine the following list of goods you might purchase at an electronics store:

watch/clock	時計	tokei
necklace	ネックレス	nekkuresu
computer	パソコン	pasokon
cell phone	携帯(電話)	keitai (denwa)
smart phone	スマートフォン	sumātofon
printer	プリンター	purintā
camera	カメラ	kamera
game software	ゲームソフト	gēmusoftware
scanner	スキャナー	sukyanā
tablet	タブレット	taburetto

Asking “how much?” withいくら ikura

Use いくら **ikura** to ask the price of something. For example:

あのカメラはいくらですか。

Ano kamera wa ikura desu ka.

How much is that camera?

You can also use 何ドルですか **Nan-doru desu ka** (*How much in dollars?*) or 何円ですか **Nan-en desu ka** (*How much in Japanese yen?*) if currency units need to be clarified.

Shopping by saying . . . をください o kudasai

Once you decide to buy something, say the name of the item and add をください o kudasai. It means *Please give it to me*, and is a perfect phrase to let the store clerk know what you decided to buy. For example:

あの時計をください。

Ano tokei o kudasai.

I'll take that watch.

Listing nouns with と to

If you are buying multiple items, connect them with the particle と to. For example:

このパソコンとこのスキャナーとあのプリンターをください。

Kono pasokon to kono sukyanā to ano purintā o kudasai.

May I have this PC, this scanner, and that printer?

EXERCISE

3-22

Kazuko is trying to buy a wrist watch at a store in Japan. Complete the following conversation appropriately.

KAZUKO

すみません。その時計はいくらですか。

Sumimasen. Sono tokei wa ikura desu ka.

Excuse me. How much is that watch?

STORE CLERK

これですか。

Kore desu ka.

This one?

KAZUKO

はい。

Hai.

Yes.

STORE CLERK

これは12,000円です。

Kore wa ichi-man-ni-sen-en desu.

This one is 12,000 yen.

KAZUKO

ああ、そうですか。じゃあ、あの時計は 1. _____ ですか。

Ā, sō desu ka. Jā, ano tokei wa 1. _____ desu ka.

Oh, I see. Then, how much is that watch?

STORE CLERK

あれは1,500円です。

Are wa sen-go-hyaku-en desu.

That one is 1,500 yen.

KAZUKO じゃあ、この時計とあの時計を 2. _____。

Jā, kono tokei to ano tokei o 2. _____.

Then, please give me this watch and that watch.

STORE CLERK ありがとうございます。

Arigatō gozaimasu.

Thank you very much.

Asking “how many?” with counters

Japanese uses different counters to express the amount or quantity of a variety of items. The choice of counters varies depending on the shapes, sizes, and types of items. When you ask “how many?” you need to use a number phrase that is made of a numeral and the appropriate counter.

Using number phrases in a sentence

You need to place a counter after the numeral whenever you want to express the quantity or amount of virtually anything—whether it’s people, animals, or cars. The choice of counters varies depending on the shape, size, and type of the item. For example, if there are two sheets of origami paper, you say 折り紙が2枚あります **Origami ga ni-mai arimasu**. If there are two pens, you say ペンが2本あります **Pen ga ni-hon arimasu**. To express existence or to mean *there is . . .* or *there are . . .*, あります **arimasu** is used for inanimate items, and います **imasu** is used for animate items. See Chapter 6 for these existential verbs.

Frequently used counters

The following are some frequently used counters:

cylindrical-shaped objects (e.g., bananas, pens, pencils, cigarettes, bottles)	本 hon/bon/pon
flat-shaped objects (e.g., paper, sheets, tickets, postal stamps)	枚 mai
mechanical objects (e.g., TV, radio, computer, refrigerator)	台 dai
small or medium-size animals (e.g., fish, dogs, cats)	匹 hiki/biki/piki
bound items (e.g., books, dictionaries, notebooks, magazines)	冊 satsu
people (e.g., students, children); a native number phrase is used for one (1) and two (2)	人 nin
a variety of inanimate items (e.g., chairs, beds, apples, candies); used with Japanese native numerals	つ tsu

Some of these counters cause irregular sound changes. The pronunciations of the counters with numerals from 1 to 10 are as follows. Notice that the pronunciation し **shi** for the number 4 is rarely used when combined with a counter.

The following tables show how different counters are pronounced when they are combined with numerals:

COUNTING LONG ITEMS

1本 (一本)	2本 (二本)	3本 (三本)	4本 (四本)	5本 (五本)	6本 (六本)	7本 (七本)	8本 (八本)	9本 (九本)	10本 (十本)
いっぽ ん	にほん	さんぽ ん	よんぽ ん	ごほん	ろっぽ ん	ななほ ん	はっぽ ん	きゅうほ ん	じゅっぽ ん/じっぽ ん
ip- pon	ni- hon	san- bon	yon- hon	go- hon	rop- pon	nana- hon	hap- pon	kyū- hon	jup-pon/ jip-pon

COUNTING FLAT ITEMS

1枚 (一枚)	2枚 (二枚)	3枚 (三枚)	4枚 (四枚)	5枚 (五枚)	6枚 (六枚)	7枚 (七枚)	8枚 (八枚)	9枚 (九枚)	10枚 (十枚)
いちまい	にまい	さんまい	よんまい	ごまい	ろくまい	ななまい	はちまい	きゅうまい	じゅうまい
ichi-mai	ni-mai	san-mai	yon-mai	go-mai	roku- mai	nana- mai	hachi- mai	kyū-mai	jū-mai

COUNTING MACHINES

1台 (一台)	2台 (二台)	3台 (三台)	4台 (四台)	5台 (五台)	6台 (六台)	7台 (七台)	8台 (八台)	9台 (九台)	10台 (十台)
いちだい	にだい	さんだい	よんだい	ごだい	ろくだい	ななだい	はちだい	きゅうだい	じゅうだい
ichi- dai	ni-dai	san- dai	yon- dai	go- dai	roku- dai	nana- dai	hachi- dai	kyū- dai	jū- dai

COUNTING SMALL OR MEDIUM-SIZE ANIMALS

1匹 (一匹)	2匹 (二匹)	3匹 (三匹)	4匹 (四匹)	5匹 (五匹)	6匹 (六匹)	7匹 (七匹)	8匹 (八匹)	9匹 (九匹)	10匹 (十匹)
いっぴ き	にひき	さんび き	よんひ き	ごひき	ろっぴ き	ななひ き	はっぴ き	きゅうひ き	じゅっぴ き/じっ ぴき
ip-piki	ni-hiki	san-biki	yon-hiki	go-hiki	rop- piki	nana- hiki	hap- piki	kyū- hiki	jup-piki/ jip-piki

COUNTING BOUND ITEMS

1冊 (一冊)	2冊 (二冊)	3冊 (三冊)	4冊 (四冊)	5冊 (五冊)	6冊 (六冊)	7冊 (七冊)	8冊 (八冊)	9冊 (九冊)	10冊 (十冊)
いっさ つ	にさつ	さんさ つ	よんさ つ	ごさつ	ろくさ つ	ななさ つ	はっさ つ	きゅうさ つ	じゅっさ つ / じっさつ
is-satsu	ni-satsu	san- satsu	yon- satsu	go-satsu	roku- satsu	nana- satsu	has- satsu	kyū- satsu	jus-satsu/ jis-satsu

COUNTING PEOPLE

1人 (一人)	2人 (二人)	3人 (三人)	4人 (四人)	5人 (五人)	6人 (六人)	7人 (七人)	8人 (八人)	9人 (九人)	10人 (十人)
ひとり	ふたり	さんにん	よにん	ごにん	ろくにん	ななにん / しちにん	はちにん	きゅうにん	じゅうにん
hito-ri	futa-ri	san-nin	yo-nin	go-nin	roku-nin	nana-nin / shichi-nin	hachi-nin	kyū-nin	jū-nin

COUNTING MEDIUM-SIZE INANIMATE ITEMS

1つ (一つ)	2つ (二つ)	3つ (三つ)	4つ (四つ)	5つ (五つ)	6つ (六つ)	7つ (七つ)	8つ (八つ)	9つ (九つ)	10(十)
ひとつ	ふたつ	みっつ	よっつ	いつつ	むっつ	ななつ	やっつ	ここのつ	とお
hito-tsu	futa-tsu	mit-tsu	yot-tsu	itsu-tsu	mut-tsu	nana-tsu	yat-tsu	kokono-tsu	tō

The most neutral way of expressing the amount or the quantity of some item in a sentence is to place a number phrase after the item you are counting along with the associated particle. For example:

切手が3枚あります。

Kitte ga san-mai arimasu.

There are three postage stamps.

切手を3枚ください。

Kitte o san-mai kudadai.

Please give me three stamps.

You can list multiple items in a sentence along with number phrases, as shown here:

100 円の切手が3枚と、120円の切手が2枚あります。

Hyaku-en no kitte ga san-mai to, hyaku-ni-jū-en no kitte ga ni-mai arimas.

There are three 100-yen stamps and two 120-yen stamps.

100 円の切手を3枚と、120円の切手を2枚ください。

Hyaku-en no kitte o san-mai to hyaku-ni-jū-en no kitte o ni-mai kudasai.

Please give me three 100-yen stamps and two 120-yen stamps.

EXERCISE

3-23

Write the pronunciation of the following phrases in hiragana or romaji.

EXAMPLE Five origami sheets: ごまい **go-mai** (5枚)

- Two students: _____
- Three machines: _____
- Two apples: _____
- Five books: _____
- Three cats: _____
- One dog: _____

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. There are two dogs. (犬 **inu** means *dog*)

2. There are four postage stamps. (切手 **kitte** means *postage stamp*)

3. There are three cars. (車 **kuruma** means *car*)

4. Please give me three notebooks. (ノート **nōto** means *notebook*)

5. Please give me two bananas. (バナナ **banana** means *banana*)

6. Please give me two bananas and three apples. (りんご **ringo** means *apple*)

Around town

•4•

This chapter explains the basic verb conjugation system and shows you different way of expressing and asking about actions such as coming and going. You'll also learn how to ask questions that inquire “anywhere?” and “where?” as well as how to reply to such questions.

Basic verb forms and verb classes

Unlike English verbs, Japanese verbs do not change their forms based on person, gender, or number, but they change their forms based on the formality of speech (plain or polite), polarity (affirmative or negative), and tense (non-past or past). Non-past tense is used to express future actions and habitual actions, or actions that have not yet started. Past tense is used to express past actions or actions that have completed. There are only two major irregular verbs, する **suru** (*do*) and 来る **kuru** (*come*), and all the rest are regular verbs. There are two kinds of regular verbs: **ru** verbs and **u** verbs.

Dictionary and masu forms of verbs

The dictionary form of a verb is the plain non-past affirmative form. It is the shortest verb form that can end a sentence. It is called “dictionary form” because it is used for listing verbs in dictionaries. The **masu** form of a verb is the polite non-past affirmative form. It is the polite version of the dictionary form. For example, the dictionary form of the verb *to eat* is 食べる **taberu**, whereas its **masu** form is 食べます **tabemasu**.

Ru and u verbs

変える **kaeru** and 帰る **kaeru** are homophones. They sound the same in their dictionary forms, but their meanings are different, as shown by their differing kanji. 変える **kaeru** means *to change* and 帰る **kaeru** means *to return*. Although their dictionary forms are the same, they conjugate differently. The **masu** form of 変える **kaeru** is 変えます **kaemasu**, and the **masu** form of 帰る **kaeru** is 帰ります **kaerimasu**. So, for some verbs, you drop the final **ru** in the dictionary form and add **masu** to get a **masu** form. However, for other verbs, you drop **u** (pronounce it as *oo* not as *yoo*) and add **imasu**. The verbs in which you have to drop **ru** are called **ru verbs** and those in which you have to drop **u** are called **u verbs**.

The following table lists representative **ru** verbs and **u** verbs as well as the two major irregular verbs in the dictionary form and **masu** form. To conjugate a verb,

you find out its verb class (**ru** verb, **u** verb, or irregular verb) and check the ending of the dictionary form, and then you follow the pattern of one of the verbs in the following table:

Verb Class	Ending of the Dictionary Form		Dictionary Form (Plain non-past affirmative)	Masu Form (Polite non-past affirmative)
	Hiragana	Romaji		
Ru verb	...える	... eru	かえる kaeru (<i>change</i>)	かえます kaemasu
	...いる	... iru	きる kiru (<i>wear</i>)	きます kimasu
U verb	...す	... su	はなす hanasu (<i>speak</i>)	はなします hanashimasu
	...く	... ku	かく kaku (<i>write</i>)	かきます kakimasu
	...ぐ	... gu	およぐ oyogu (<i>swim</i>)	およぎます oyogimasu
	...む	... mu	よむ yomu (<i>read</i>)	よみます yomimasu
	...ぬ	... nu	しぬ shinu (<i>die</i>)	しにます shinimasu
	...ぶ	... bu	とぶ tobu (<i>jump</i>)	とびます tobimasu
	...う	... vowel + u	かう kau (<i>buy</i>)	かいます kaimasu
	...る	... ru	きる kiru (<i>cut</i>)	きります kirimasu
	...つ	... tsu	まつ matsu (<i>wait</i>)	まちます machimasu
Irregular verb			くる kuru (<i>come</i>)	きます kimasu
			する suru (<i>do</i>)	します shimasu

If you can see that the verb class is ambiguous only if a verb ends in **-iru** or **-eru**, you are on the right track. If a verb does not end in **-iru** or **-eru**, you can trust that it's an **u** verb. If it ends in **-iru** or **-eru**, you need to remember which class the verb belongs to each time. In this book, verbs are specified for verb class *only if* they end in **-iru** or **-eru**.

EXERCISE

4.1

Change the following verbs from the dictionary form to the **masu** form. You should know whether they are **ru** verbs or **u** verbs by looking at their endings.

- 取る **toru** (*take*) _____
- 売る **uru** (*sell*) _____
- 始まる **hajimaru** (*start*) _____
- 作る **tsukuru** (*make*) _____
- 読む **yomu** (*read*) _____
- 飲む **nomu** (*drink*) _____
- 買う **kau** (*buy*) _____
- 書く **kaku** (*write*) _____
- 泳ぐ **oyogu** (*swim*) _____
- 運ぶ **hakobu** (*carry*) _____
- 待つ **matsu** (*wait*) _____
- 話す **hanasu** (*speak*) _____

EXERCISE

4.2

The following verbs are all **ru** verbs in the dictionary form. Convert them to the **masu** form.

1. 変える **kaeru** (*change*) _____
2. 着る **kiru** (*wear*) _____
3. 食べる **taberu** (*eat*) _____
4. 寝る **neru** (*sleep*) _____

EXERCISE

4.3

The following verbs are all **u** verbs in the dictionary form. Convert them to the **masu** form.

1. 帰る **kaeru** (*return*) _____
2. 切る **kiru** (*cut*) _____
3. 走る **hashiru** (*run*) _____
4. しゃべる **shaberu** (*chat*) _____

Frequently used verbs

Motion verbs like *to go* and *to come* are very frequently used in daily life. There are many native verbs, and there are also many **suru** verbs—verbs that are created by combining Sino-Japanese vocabulary written in kanji characters and the verb する **suru** (*do*). In addition, many **suru** verbs are made from English. **Suru** verbs conjugate like the verb する **suru**, one of the two major irregular verbs. The following list includes some frequently used Japanese verbs:

buy	買う	kau
clean	掃除する	sōji suru
come	来る	kuru
do	する	suru
do laundry	洗濯する	sentaku suru
drink	飲む	nomu
eat	食べる	taberu (ru verb)
go	行く	iku
make	作る	tsukuru
make a copy	コピーする	kopī suru
read	読む	yomu
return	帰る	kaeru (u verb)
sleep	寝る	neru (ru verb)
study	勉強する	benkyō-suru
wake up	起きる	okiru
write	書く	kaku

EXERCISE

4.4

Write the appropriate Japanese verbs using two forms—the dictionary form and the **masu** form.

1. to make _____

2. to read _____

3. to write _____

4. to drink _____

5. to go _____

6. to study _____

7. to come _____

EXERCISE

4.5

The following verbs end in either **-iru** or **-eru**. Do you remember whether they are **ru** verbs or **u** verbs? If not, check the earlier vocabulary list on page 65 or use a dictionary to find their verb class and change them into the **masu** form.

1. 食べる **taberu** _____

2. 帰る **kaeru** _____

3. 寝る **neru** _____

EXERCISE

4-6

The following commonly used verbs are not included in the list on page 65. They do not end in **-iru** or **-eru**, so you can be sure that they are **u** verbs. Change them to their **masu** form.

1. なる **nar**u (become) _____
2. 売る **uru** (sell) _____
3. 取る **toru** (take) _____
4. 聞く **kiku** (listen) _____
5. 歩く **aruku** (walk) _____
6. 貸す **kasu** (lend) _____
7. 話す **hanasu** (speak) _____
8. 会う **au** (meet) _____
9. 洗う **arau** (wash) _____
10. 待つ **matsu** (wait) _____
11. 持つ **motsu** (hold) _____
12. 休む **yasumu** (rest) _____
13. 住む **sumu** (reside, live) _____
14. 死ぬ **shinu** (die) _____
15. 選ぶ **erabu** (select) _____
16. 運ぶ **hakobu** (carry) _____

EXERCISE

4-7

The following verbs all end in **-iru** or **-eru**. Compare the two forms of each verb and determine whether it is a **ru** verb or an **u** verb.

1. 入る **hairu** (enter), 入ります **hairimasu** _____
2. 走る **hashiru** (run), 走ります **hashirimasu** _____
3. 開ける **akeru** (open), 開けます **akemasu** _____
4. 着る **kiru** (wear), 着ます **kimasu** _____
5. 閉める **shimeru** (close), 閉めます **shimemasu** _____
6. あげる **ageru** (give), あげます **agemasu** _____

7. 知る **shiru** (*get to know*), 知ります **shirimasu**
8. つける **tsukeru** (*turn on*), つけます **tsukemasu**
9. 捨てる **suteru** (*throw away*), 捨てます **sutemasu**
10. 覚える **oboeru** (*memorize*), 覚えます **oboemasu**

Going to the supermarket

Here you will learn how to express coming and going, how to make a verb negative, and some terms that refer to various places around town. With this knowledge, you will be able to ask someone whether he will go to the supermarket, or reply to such a question.

Showing the destination with に **ni** or へ **e**

To express coming and going, use the verbs 行く **iku**, 来る **kuru**, and 帰る **kaeru** and mark the destination with the particle に **ni** or へ **e**, which is read as **e** rather than **he**. に **ni** has many more functions than the particle へ **e**, and you cannot use them interchangeably all the time. However, for marking where you are going, you can use either one. For example:

私はスーパーに行きます。
Watashi wa sūpā ni ikimasu.
私はスーパーへ行きます。
Watashi wa sūpā e ikimasu.
I'll go to the supermarket.

The polite non-past negative suffix ません **masen**

ません **masen** is a negative counterpart of ます **masu** and makes the verb negative. For example, 行きません **ikimasen** means *I will not go*.

The negative scope marker は **wa**

The part of a sentence that is negated is usually marked by は **wa**. Using this marker is optional but preferred. It is a little confusing because は **wa** also marks topics (Chapter 2), so you will see は **wa** in both affirmative and negative sentences. For example, compare the two responses to the question あしたはスーパーに行きますか **Ashita wa sūpā ni ikimasu ka** (*Will you go to the supermarket tomorrow?*):

あしたは行きません。
Ashita wa ikimasen.
I won't go there tomorrow (although I might go there the day after tomorrow).
スーパーには行きません。
Sūpā ni wa ikimasen.
I won't go to the supermarket (although I might go somewhere else tomorrow).

Places around town

Use the following terms to talk about various places around town:

apartment	アパート	apāto
bookstore	本屋	hon'ya
cafe	喫茶店	kissaten

<i>department store</i>	デパート	depāto
<i>home</i>	うち	uchi
<i>hospital</i>	病院	byōin
<i>karaoke</i>	カラオケ	karaoke
<i>library</i>	図書館	toshokan
<i>movie theater</i>	映画館	eigakan
<i>park</i>	公園	kōen
<i>post office</i>	郵便局	yūbinkyoku
<i>restaurant</i>	レストラン	resutoran
<i>supermarket</i>	スーパー	sūpā

Stores: . . . 屋 **ya**

You can refer to some types of stores by using a friendly term that ends in **ya**. For example, bookstores are called either 本屋 **hon'ya** or 書店 **shoten**. The former is more frequently used in conversations than the latter, which is limited in formal situations such as for business. If you go to Japan, you may want to look for the shops and stores in the following list:

<i>(Korean style) barbecue restaurant</i>	焼肉屋	yakinikuya
<i>bakery</i>	パン屋	pan'ya
<i>bar</i>	飲み屋	nomiya
<i>bookstore</i>	本屋	hon'ya
<i>fish market</i>	魚屋	sakanaya
<i>flower shop</i>	花屋	hanaya
<i>Japanese-style bar</i>	居酒屋	izakaya
<i>liquor store</i>	酒屋	sakaya
<i>meat store</i>	肉屋	nikuya
<i>ramen shop</i>	ラーメン屋	rāmen'ya
<i>shoe store</i>	靴屋	kutsuya
<i>sushi shop</i>	すし屋	sushiya
<i>toy store</i>	おもちゃ屋	omochaya

EXERCISE

4.8

Match the words in the two columns.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. デパート depāto _____ | a. restaurant |
| 2. スーパー sūpā _____ | b. shoe store |
| 3. レストラン resutoran _____ | c. bakery |
| 4. うち uchi _____ | d. home |
| 5. 図書館 toshokan _____ | e. department store |
| 6. 本屋 hon'ya _____ | f. supermarket |
| 7. 靴屋 kutsuya _____ | g. library |
| 8. パン屋 pan'ya _____ | h. bookstore |

Complete the following short dialogs.

1. A: 今日は図書館に行きますか。

Kyō wa toshokan ni ikimasu ka.

B: いいえ, _____。

Īe, _____.

2. A: 田中さんは今日 _____ か。

Tanaka-san wa kyō _____ ka.

B: いいえ, 来ません。

Īe, kimasen.

3. A: あしたはデパートに行きますか。

Ashita wa depāto ni ikimasu ka.

B: はい, _____。

Hai, _____.

4. A: いつうちに _____。

Itsu uchi ni _____.

B: あした帰ります。

Ashita kaerimasu.

Asking “where?” and saying *anywhere*, *somewhere*, and *nowhere*

Here you’ll learn how to ask “where?” and “somewhere/anywhere?” and how to reply to such questions with words like *somewhere* or *nowhere*.

Asking “where?”

To ask where someone is going, use the question word どこ **doko**. Just place it where you expect the answer to be and add the particle か **ka** at the end of the sentence. For example:

今日はどこに行きますか。

Kyō wa doko ni ikimasu ka.

Where are you going today?

The polite version of どこ **doko** is どちら **dochira**. (See Chapter 2.)

Existential pronouns

To say *somewhere* or *anywhere*, add the particle か **ka** right after the question word どこ **doko**. For example:

今日はどこかに行きます。
Kyō wa dokoka ni ikimasu.
I will go to somewhere today.

今日はどこかに行きますか。
Kyō wa dokoka ni ikimasu ka.
Are you going to anywhere today?

You can use the same method with other question words, such as だれ **dare** (*who*). The following table provides some examples. The particles が **ga** and を **o** are usually deleted after such existential pronouns.

English	Japanese	Romaji	Examples
someone/anyone	だれか	dareka	だれかと一緒にしますか。 Dareka to issho ni shimasu ka. <i>Will (you) do (it) together with someone?</i> だれか来ますか。 Dareka kimasu ka? <i>Will someone come?</i>
somewhere/anywhere	どこか	dokoka	どこかに行きますか。 Dokoka ni ikimasu ka. <i>Will you go somewhere?</i>
something/anything	何か	nanika	何かと合います。 Nanika to aimasen. <i>(It) will suit with something.</i> 何か買いますか。 Nanika kaimasu ka. <i>Will you buy something?</i>

Negative pronouns

If you are going *nowhere*, add も **mo** after どこに **doko ni** and make the verb negative. For example:

今日はどこにも行きません。
Kyō wa doko ni mo ikimasen.
I will go nowhere today. / I will not go anywhere today.

You can use the same method with other question words, such as だれ **dare** (*who*). The following table provides some examples. The particle が **ga** and を **o** must be deleted after such existential pronouns.

English	Japanese	Romaji	Examples
no one (not ... anyone)	だれ... も	dare ... mo	だれとも話しません。 Dare to mo hanashimasen. (He) does not talk with anyone. だれも来ません。 Dare mo kimasen. No one will come.
nowhere (not ... anywhere)	どこ... も	doko ... mo	どこにも行きません。 Doko ni mo ikimasen. I will not go anywhere.
nothing (not ... anything)	何... も	nani ... mo	何とも合いません。 Nani to mo aimasen. (It) does not suit with anything. 何も買いません。 Nani mo kaimasen. (I) will not buy anything.

EXERCISE

4-10

Complete the sentences.

1. 今日は _____ 行きますか。

Kyō wa _____ ikimasu ka.

Where are you going today?

2. 今日は _____ 行きますか。

Kyō wa _____ ikimasu ka.

Will you go to somewhere today?

3. あしたは _____。

Ashita wa _____.

I won't go anywhere tomorrow.

EXERCISE

4-11

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. I will go to the bookstore today.

2. I will not go anywhere tomorrow.

3. Will you go to somewhere tomorrow?

4. Where will you go today?

Habitual actions

Habitual actions are actions you do repeatedly, such as daily or weekly. Here you'll learn how to ask someone whether he/she often goes to a certain place. You'll also learn about adverbs related to frequency.

Asking about habitual actions with よく **yoku** (*often*)

To ask someone whether he/she often goes to a certain place, use the non-past tense of the verb 行く **iku** (*to go*) and add the frequency adverb よく **yoku**, which means *often*. For example:

田中さんはよくレストランに行きますか。
Tanaka-san wa yoku restoran ni ikimasu ka.
Do you often go to a restaurant, Mr. Tanaka?

Frequency adverbs

The following list shows commonly used frequency adverbs. The adverbs marked with * need to be used with a negative verb, as in the following example:

私はレストランにはあまり行きません。
Watashi wa resutoran ni wa amari ikimasen.
I don't go to restaurants very often.

<i>often</i>	よく	yoku
<i>sometimes</i>	ときどき	tokidoki
<i>once in a while</i>	たまに	tamani
<i>not very often</i>	あまり*	amari*
<i>rarely...</i>	めったに*	mettani*
<i>never...</i>	ぜんぜん*	zenzen*

EXERCISE

4-12

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. よくレストランに行きます。

Yoku resutoran ni ikimasu.

2. ときどきデパートに行きます。

Tokidoki depāto ni ikimasu.

3. たまに公園に行きます。

Tama ni kōen ni ikimasu.

4. 図書館にはあまり行きません。

Toshokan ni wa amari ikimasen.

5. カラオケにはぜんぜん行きません。

Karaoke ni wa zenzen ikimasen.

EXERCISE

4-13

For each of the following, choose the correct answer from the options in parentheses.

1. よく本屋に(行きます, 行きません)。

Yoku hon'ya ni (ikimasu, ikimasen).

2. 映画館にはあまり(行きます, 行きません)。

Eigakan ni wa amari (ikimasu, ikimasen).

3. ときどき居酒屋に(行きます, 行きません)。

Tokidoki izakaya ni (ikimasu, ikimasen).

Making suggestions

Here you will learn about making suggestions and specifying absolute and approximate times. You will also learn how to express the purpose of going somewhere.

... ませんか **masen ka** and ... ましょう **mashō**

To suggest doing something, use the negative question ending ませんか **masen ka** instead of ます **masu**. If you want to say *Let's do something!* use ましょう **mashō**. For example:

レストランに行きませんか。

Resutoran ni ikimasen ka.

Why don't we go to a restaurant?

レストランに行きましょう。

Resutoran ni ikimashō.

Let's go to a restaurant.

If you use ましょう **mashō** in a form of a question, it is understood as a suggestion or offering of help. For example:

レストランに行きましょうか。

Resutoran ni ikimashō ka.

Shall we go to a restaurant?

私が 掃除しましょうか。

Watashi ga sōji shimashō ka.

Shall I clean?

If it includes a question word, it will be used for inviting suggestions:

どのレストランに行きましょうか。

Dono resutoran ni ikimashō ka.

To which restaurant shall we go?

Specifying an absolute time with に ni

To say when, use time expressions such as *tomorrow*, *next week*, and *on Monday*. After absolute time expressions such as *Monday*, use the particle に **ni**. After relative time expressions such as *tomorrow*, you do not need to use に **ni**. For example:

水曜日にすし屋に行きませんか。

Suiyōbi ni sushiya ni ikimasen ka.

How about going to a sushi restaurant on Wednesday?

今日すし屋に行きませんか。

Kyō sushiya ni ikimasen ka.

How about going to a sushi restaurant today?

For relative and absolute time expressions, see Chapter 3.

Saying approximately

To say *approximately* for quantity, amount, and time expressions, use くらい **kurai** or ぐらい **gurai** after the number phrase. For time expressions, you can also use ごろ **goro**. For example:

3時ぐらいに来ます。

San-ji gurai ni kimasu.

(He) will come here around 3 o'clock.

クッキーを5枚ぐらい食べます。

Kukkī o go-mai gurai tabemasu.

(He) eats about five cookies.

5時ごろに来ます。

Go-ji goro ni kimasu.

(He) will come here around 5 o'clock.

Expressing the purpose of going with . . . に行く ni iku

Instead of mentioning a destination, you might want to mention the purpose of going. If so, use a verb in the stem form and add the particle に **ni**. The stem form of a verb is usually the form you see before ます **masu** in the **masu** form. Therefore, the stem form is often called *pre-masu form*. For example:

映画を見に行きませんか。

Eiga o mi ni ikimasen ka.

Why don't we go to see a movie?

Some nouns can be followed by に **ni** to show the purpose of going. For example, キャンプ に行く **kyanpu ni iku** means *to go camping*. The following are some examples of purpose of going, expressed either with a verb stem or a noun:

to go camping

to go for a drink

to go shopping

キャンプに行く

飲みに行く

買い物に行く

kyanpu ni iku

nomi ni iku

kaimono ni iku

to go to buy...
to go to eat...
to go to see...
to visit...

...を買いに行く
...を食べに行く
...を見に行く
...に遊びに行く

... o kai ni iku
... o tabe ni iku
... o mi ni iku
... ni asobi ni iku

EXERCISE

4-14

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 今晚映画を見に行きませんか。

Konban eiga o mi ni ikimasen ka.

2. キャンプに行きませんか。

Kyanpu ni ikimasen ka.

3. 土曜日に買い物に行きませんか。

Doyōbi ni kaimono ni ikimasen ka.

4. あした日本語の辞書を買に行きませんか。

Ashita Nihongo no jisho o kai ni ikimasen ka.

5. 来年沖縄に遊びに行きませんか。

Rainen Okinawa ni asobi ni ikimasen ka.

6. 来週マイクさんのうちに遊びに行きませんか。

Raishū Maiku-san no uchi ni asobi ni ikimasen ka.

7. 何時ごろに行きましようか。

Nan-ji goro ni ikimashō ka.

Translate the following into Japanese.

1. Will you go to the supermarket today?

2. Will you go anywhere tomorrow?

3. Why don't we go to Japan next year?

4. Do you often go to restaurants?

5. I don't go to a library very often.

6. Let's go to the park!

Transportation

Here you'll learn how to specify the form of transportation and the length of time needed to go somewhere. You'll also learn some useful sentence-final particles you can use for getting an agreement for your statement or for emphasizing your statement.

Specifying the form of transportation with で **de**

To specify how you go somewhere, say the form of the transportation and add the particle で **de**. The particle で **de** is used with many different verbs, but it usually specifies the item or condition used for the action. When the action is going, で **de** specifies the form of transportation. For example, 大阪に車でいきます **Ōsaka ni kuruma de ikimasu** means (I) will go to Osaka by car. If you walk somewhere rather than use another form of transportation, use 歩いて **aruite**, which is the **te** form of the 歩く **aruku** (to walk). For example, 歩いて図書館に行きます **Aruite toshokan ni ikimasu** means I go to the library on foot or I walk to the library. See Chapter 5 for more about the **te** form of verbs.

Words for transportation

Use the following words to refer to different modes of transportation:

airplane
bicycle
bus
car

飛行機
自転車
バス
車

hikōki
jitensha
basu
kuruma

ferry
shinkansen (bullet train)
subway
taxi
train

フェリー
新幹線
地下鉄
タクシー
電車

ferī
shinkansen
chikatetsu
takushī
densha

Counters for hours and minutes

To specify the length of time needed for an activity, use the counters 時間 **jikan** (hours) and 分 **fun** (minutes) and the verb かかる **kakaru** (to take, to cost). For example, 1時間15分かかります **Ichi-jikan jū-go-fun kakarimasu** means *It takes one hour and 15 minutes*. Here we are talking about the length of time needed for an activity rather than the time of day.

Sentence-ending particles ね **ne** and よ **yo**

End a sentence with ね **ne** if you want to get an agreement to your statement. End a sentence with よ **yo** if you want to emphasize your statement. For example:

いい天気ですね。

Ii tenki desu ne.

It's a nice weather, isn't it?

日本語は簡単ですよ。

Nihongo wa kantan desu yo.

Japanese is easy, I tell you!

EXERCISE

4-16

Complete each sentence with the appropriate word or phrase.

1. 私は会社に _____ 行きます。

Watashi wa kaisha ni _____ ikimasu.

I drive to my company.

2. 私は大学に _____ 行きます。

Watashi wa daigaku ni _____ ikimasu.

I go to my university by a bus and a train.

3. 母はスーパーに _____ 行きます。

Haha wa sūpā ni _____ ikimasu.

My mother walks to the supermarket.

4. _____ 帰りませんか。

_____ **kaerimasen ka.**

Why don't we go home by taxi?

5. 田中さんは _____ ここにきました。

Tanaka-san wa _____ koko ni kimashita.

Mr. Tanaka came here by bicycle.

EXERCISE

4-17

The following passage was written by Takeshi. Read it carefully and answer the questions that follow.

父は銀行で働いています。銀行にはバスと電車で行きます。バスで15分と電車で30分です。姉は看護師です。病院にはバスで行きます。バスで25分です。私は大学の英語の学生です。大学にはバスと地下鉄で行きます。1時間かかります。

Chichi wa ginkō de hataraitte imasu. Ginkō ni wa basu to densha de ikimasu. Basu de jū-go-fun to densha de sanjū-pun desu. Ane wa kangoshi desu. Byōin ni wa basu de ikimasu. Basu de ni-jū-go-fun desu. Watashi wa daigaku no eigo no gakusei desu. Daigaku ni wa basu to chikatetsu de ikimasu. Ichi-jikan kakarimasu.

1. How long does it take for Takeshi's father to commute? _____
2. How about for his sister? _____
3. What modes of transportation does Takeshi use to commute to his school? _____

EXERCISE

4-18

Read the following dialog between Takeshi and George and answer the questions that follow.

TAKESHI 今晚カラオケに行きませんか。

Konban karaoke ni ikimasen ka.

GEORGE いいですね。行きましょう。

Ii desu ne. Ikimashō.

(いい ii means good)

TAKESHI 何時ごろ?

Nan-ji goro?

GEORGE 7時は?

Shichi-ji wa?

TAKESHI いいですよ。孝子さんも雪子さんも誘いましょう。

Ii desu yo. Takako-san mo Yukiko-san mo sasoimashō.

GEORGE ええ。

Ē.

1. When are they going to karaoke?

2. Who are going?

3. What does いいですね **li desu ne** in the dialog mean?

4. What does いいですよ **li desu yo** in the dialog mean?

Talking about activities

•5•

This chapter shows you how to express a variety of activities while paying close attention to the time and the aspect of the action using different kinds of adverbs and verb forms. You'll learn how to talk about activities that occur often in your life, activities you've done in the past, and activities you're planning to do. You'll also learn how to express your abilities and how to make requests.

Recurring activities

Here you'll learn how to talk about the activities you do daily, using a variety of verbs for actions.

Words for proportional frequency

Adverbs like *usually* and *always* refer to proportional frequency:

<i>usually</i>	たいてい	taitei
<i>always</i>	いつも	itsumo

The direct object marker を o

For many actions, you need to specify the item that the action directly affects or applies to. These items are traditionally called *direct objects* in grammar. A direct object can be a thing or a person. In English, we know which noun is the direct object because it immediately follows a verb, without an intervening preposition. By contrast, in Japanese, the word order can be flexible. However, a direct object is clearly marked by the particle を o. Read the following sentences and identify the direct object in each:

母はよくケーキを作ります。
Haha wa yoku kēki o tsukurimasu.
My mother often makes a cake.

誕生日に友達を5人招待します。
Tanjōbi ni tomodachi o go-nin shōtai shimasu.
I'll invite five of my friends on my birthday.

Daily routines

Certain actions are part of the daily routine for almost everyone. For example:

<i>to brush one's teeth</i>	歯を磨く	ha o migaku
<i>to get dressed</i>	服を着る	fuku o kiru

<i>to go to bed</i>	寝る	neru
<i>to have breakfast</i>	朝ご飯を食べる	asa-gohan o taberu
<i>to have dinner</i>	晩ご飯を食べる	ban-gohan o taberu
<i>to have lunch</i>	昼ご飯を食べる	hiru-gohan o taberu
<i>to take a shower</i>	シャワーを浴びる	shawā o abiru
<i>to wake up</i>	起きる	okiru
<i>to wash one's face</i>	顔を洗う	kao o arau

Specifying the location of activities with で de

To specify the location of an activity, use the particle で **de**. For example:

うちで映画を見ます
Uchi de eiga o mimasu.
I watch a movie at home.

Think of で **de** as marking what is being used for the action. It could be a transportation method, the location of an activity, a tool, or some means. For example:

車でいきます。
Kuruma de ikimasu.
I go there by car.

図書館で勉強します。
Toshokan de benkyō shimasu.
I study at the library.

箸で食べます。
Hashi de tabemasu.
I eat with chopsticks.

日本語で話してください。
Nihon-go de hanashite kudasai.
Please speak in Japanese.

Activities on weekends

What do you do on weekends? Read manga? Watch anime? Practice karate? You can use the following phrases to express what you do on weekends:

<i>to dine</i>	食事をする	shokuji o suru
<i>to go fishing</i>	つりをする	tsuri o suru
<i>to go shopping</i>	買い物をする／買い物に行く	kaimono o suru/kaimono ni iku
<i>to go to a park</i>	公園に行く	kōen ni iku
<i>to have a party at home</i>	ホームパーティーをする	hōmupāti o suru
<i>to learn French</i>	フランス語を習う	Furansu-go o narau
<i>to play a game</i>	ゲームをする	gēmu o suru
<i>to play tennis</i>	テニスをする	tenisu o suru
<i>to play the piano</i>	ピアノを弾く	piano o hiku
<i>to play the trumpet</i>	トランペットを吹く	toranpetto o fuku
<i>to read a magazine</i>	雑誌を読む	zasshi o yomu
<i>to read manga (comic books)</i>	漫画を読む	manga o yomu
<i>to read a newspaper</i>	新聞を読む	shinbun o yomu
<i>to run</i>	走る	hashiru
<i>to send an email</i>	メールする	mēru suru
<i>to sing (at karaoke)</i>	(カラオケで) うたう	(karaoke de) utau
<i>to swim</i>	泳ぐ	oyogu

to use a computer

パソコンをする／パソコンを使う

pasokon o suru/

to walk around in the town

街をブラブラする

pasokon o tsukau

to watch a movie

映画を見る

machi o burabura suru

to watch anime

アニメを見る

eiga o miru

to write a letter

手紙を書く

anime o miru

tegami o kaku

The verb *to play*

The English verb *to play* is translated in Japanese differently depending on what is done. For playing a sport or game, use **する** **suru** (*to do*). For playing a musical instrument, use a verb that applies to the particular instrument—such as **弾く** **hiku** for string instrument and keyboard and **吹く** **fuku** (*to blow*) for wind instruments. When you're using *to play* as an intransitive verb, as in *Children are playing*, use **遊ぶ** **asobu** (*to play*).

EXERCISE

5.1

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 雑誌を読みます。 **Zasshi o yomimasu.** _____
2. 手紙を書きます。 **Tegami o kakimasu.** _____
3. 映画を見ます。 **Eiga o mimasu.** _____
4. ゲームをします。 **Gēmu o shimasu.** _____
5. ピアノを弾きます。 **Piano o hikimasu.** _____

EXERCISE

5.2

Complete each of the following sentences with **に** **ni** or **を** **o**. For a greater challenge, cover the English translations.

1. デパート _____ 行きます。

Depāto _____ ikimasu.

I will go to a department store.

2. ケーキ _____ 作ります。

Kēki _____ tsukurimasu.

I will make a cake.

3. 新聞 _____ 読みます。

Shinbun _____ yomimasu.

I will read a newspaper.

(新聞 **shinbun** means *newspaper*)

4. 映画 (movie) _____ 見ます。

Eiga _____ **mimasu.**

I will watch a movie.

5. 洋服 (cloth) _____ 買います。

Yōfuku _____ **kaimasu.**

I will buy clothes.

6. テニス _____ します。

Tenisu _____ **shimasu.**

I will play tennis.

7. ゲーム _____ します。

Gēmu _____ **shimasu.**

I will play a game.

8. うち _____ 帰ります。

Uchi _____ **kaerimasu.**

I will go home.

EXERCISE

5-3

Complete each of the following sentences with で **de** or に **ni**. For a greater challenge, cover the English translations.

1. うち _____ 帰ります。

I will go home.

Uchi _____ **kaerimasu.**

2. うち _____ 寝ます。

Uchi _____ **nemasu.**

I will sleep at home.

3. タクシー _____ うち _____ 帰ります。

Takushī _____ **uchi** _____ **kaerimasu.**

I will go home by taxi.

4. レストラン _____ 行きます。

Resutoran _____ **ikimasu.**

I will go to a restaurant.

5. レストラン _____ 食べます。

Resutoran _____ **tabemasu.**

I will eat at a restaurant.

6. 映画館 _____ 映画を見ます。

Eigakan _____ eiga o mimasu.

I will watch a movie at a movie theater.

7. うち _____ パソコン _____ アニメを見ます。

Uchi _____ pasokon _____ anime o mimasu.

I will watch anime at home using a computer.

EXERCISE

5.4

Complete each of the following sentences with を **o**, で **de**, or に **ni**. For a greater challenge, cover the English translations.

1. うち _____ ケーキ _____ 食べます。

Uchi _____ kēki _____ tabemasu.

I will eat a cake at home.

2. ケーキ _____ うち _____ 食べます。

Kēki _____ uchi _____ tabemasu.

I will eat a cake at home.

3. 車 _____ ボストン _____ 行きます。

Kuruma _____ Bosuton _____ ikimasu.

I will go to Boston by car.

4. 私はフォークとナイフ _____ 食べます。

Watashi wa fōku to naifu _____ tabemasu.

I eat with a fork and a knife.

5. 母は箸 _____ 食べます。

Haha wa hashi _____ tabemasu.

My mother eats with chopsticks.

6. 兄は空手と剣道 _____ します。

Ani wa karate to kendō _____ shimasu.

My older brother does karate and kendo.

EXERCISE

5.5

Translate the following passage into English.

週末はたいてい午前中に買い物に行きます。デパートによく行きます。それから、レストランで食事をします。それから、午後、映画館で映画を見ます。

Shūmatsu wa taitei gozenchū ni kaimono ni ikimasu. Depāto ni yoku ikimasu. Sorekara, resutoran de shokuji o shimasu. Sorekara, gogo, eigakan de eiga o mimasu.

(それから **sorekara** means *then, in addition*)

EXERCISE

5.6

In Japanese, write what you do on weekends.

Identifying the action performer

In Japanese, the subject noun is marked by the particle が **ga**. The subject noun can be the person who performs the action. If you want to specify the person who accompanies the person for doing the same action, use the particle と **to**.

Specifying the action performer with the subject marker が **ga**

The subject is marked by が **ga**. For example:

だれがギターを弾きますか。

Dare ga gitā o hikimasuka.

Who will play the guitar? / Who plays the guitar?

山田さんが弾きます。

Yamada-san ga hikimasu.

Ms. Yamada will play it. / Ms. Yamada plays it.

The subject noun can also be the topic of the sentence at the same time in many cases. Then, the topic particle は **wa** discussed in Chapter 2 can mark the subject, covering and hiding the particle が **ga**. For example:

山田さんはギターを弾きます。

Yamada-san wa gitā o hikimasu.

Ms. Yamada will play the guitar. / Ms. Yamada plays the guitar.

Specifying the accompanying action performer with と **to**

When one does something with someone else, the latter person is marked by the particle と **to**. For example:

今日は田中さんが山田さんとうちに来ます。

Kyō wa Tanaka-san ga Yamada-san to uchi ni kimasu.

Mr. Tanaka will come to my house with Ms. Yamada today.

Of course, you can rephrase it like this:

今日は田中さんと山田さんがうちに来ます。

Kyō wa Tanaka-san to Yamada-san ga uchi ni kimasu.

Mr. Tanaka and Ms. Yamada will come to my house today.

See Chapter 3 for using the particle と **to** for listing items as in the above sentence.

EXERCISE

5.7

Complete each of the following sentences with either が **ga** or を **o**. For a greater challenge, cover the English translations.

1. 田中さんが森さん _____ 招待します。

Tanaka-san ga Mori-san _____ shōtai-shimasu.

Mr. Tanaka invites Mr. Mori.

(招待する **shōtai-suru** means *to invite*)

2. 森さんを田中さん _____ 招待します。

Mori-san o Tanaka-san _____ shōtai-shimasu.

Mr. Tanaka invites Mr. Mori.

3. あしたは母 _____ てんぷら _____ 作ります。すしは父 _____ 作ります。

Ashita wa haha _____ tempura _____ tsukurimasu. Sushi wa chichi _____ tsukurimasu.

Tomorrow, my mother will make tempura. My father will make sushi.

4. 田中さんはワイン _____ 買います。

Tanaka-san wa wain _____ kaimasu.

Mr. Tanaka will buy a bottle of wine.

EXERCISE

5-8

Complete each of the following sentences with と **to** or を **o**. For a greater challenge, cover the English translations.

1. 父は中国語 _____ 話します。

Chichi wa Chūgokugo _____ hanashimasu.

My father speaks Chinese.

2. 母はよく兄 _____ 話します。

Haha wa yoku ani _____ hanashimasu.

My mother often speaks with my older brother.

3. 私はときどきうちで姉 _____ うたいます。

Watashi wa tokidoki uchi de ane _____ utaimasu.

I sometimes sing with my older sister at home.

4. 私はよくカフェテリアで田中さん _____ 山田さん _____ 見ます。

Watashi wa yoku kafeteria de Tanaka-san _____ Yamada-san _____ mimasu.

I often see Mr. Tanaka and Ms. Yamada at the cafeteria.

5. 今日は母 _____ 映画 _____ 見に行きます。

Kyō wa haha _____ eiga _____ mi ni ikimasu.

I will go to watch a movie with my mother today.

EXERCISE

5-9

The following was written by Mika. Read it and answer the questions that follow.

晩ご飯はいつも母が作ります。たいてい姉が手伝います。週末の朝ご飯は私が作ります。よくパンケーキを作ります。日曜日の昼ご飯は家族でレストランで食べます。

Ban-gohan wa itsumo haha ga tsukurimasu. Taitei ane ga tetsudaimasu. Shūmatsu no asagohan wa watashi ga tsukurimasu. Yoku pankēki o tsukurimasu. Nichiyōbi no hiru-gohan wa kazoku de resutoran de tabemasu.

(晩ご飯 **ban-gohan** means *dinner*; 手伝う **tetsudau** means *to help*; 朝ご飯 **asa-gohan** means *breakfast*; 昼ご飯 **hiru-gohan** means *lunch*; 家族で **kazoku de** means *with family*)

- Who cooks dinner? _____
- When does Mika cook? _____
- When do they eat at a restaurant? _____

Talking about the past

To describe some incidents or events in the past, use the past tense of verbs. It is also always effective to connect sentences appropriately, indicating *however*, *then*, *in addition*, or *therefore*.

... ました **mashita** and ませんでした **masendeshita**

To express past actions, replace ます **masu** with ました **mashita** and ません **masen** with ませんでした **masendeshita**. For example:

漢字を書きました
Kanji o kakimashita.
I wrote kanji.

漢字を書きませんでした
Kanji o kakimasendeshita.
I did not write kanji.

The following table summarizes non-past and past forms for both affirmative and negative polite suffixes:

AFFIRMATIVE		NEGATIVE
Non-past	書きます kakimasu	書きません kakimasen
Past	書きました kakimashita	書きませんでした kakimasendeshita

The colloquial substandard form of the past negative form can be created by changing ない **nai** in the **nai** form with なかったです **nakatta desu**, as in 書かなかったです **kakanakatta desu**. The **nai** form is introduced later in this chapter.

The conjunctions それから **sorekara**, でも **demo**, and ですから **desukara**

When talking about one's actions, it's useful to use a conjunction such as *however*, *then*, *in addition*, or *therefore*. Some useful conjunctions are listed in the following table:

English	Japanese	Romaji	Examples
<i>and then</i>	それから	sorekara	本を読みました。それから、寝ました。 Hon o yomimashita. Sorekara, nemashita. <i>I read a book. Then I went to bed.</i>
<i>however</i>	でも	demo	森さんは来ました。でも、谷さんは来ませんでした。 Mori-san wa kimashita. Demo, Tani-san wa kimasendeshita. <i>Mr. Mori came. However, Mr. Tani did not come.</i>
<i>therefore</i>	ですから	desukara	今日は友達が来ます。ですから、ワインを買います。 Kyō wa tomodachi ga kimasu. Desukara, wain o kaimasu. <i>My friend will come today. So I will buy a bottle of wine.</i>
<i>in addition</i>	それから	sorekara	週末は新聞を読みます。それから、映画を見ます。 Shūmatsu wa shinbun o yomimasu. Sorekara, eiga o mimasu. <i>On weekends, I read the newspaper. In addition, I watch a movie.</i>

For each of the following, choose the appropriate answer from the options in the parentheses. For a greater challenge, cover the English translations.

1. 昨日はテレビを見ました。それから、スパゲッティを(食べます, 食べました)。

Kinō wa terebi o mimashita. Sorekara, supagetti o (tabemasu, tabemashita).

I watched TV yesterday. Then, I ate spaghetti.

2. すしは食べます。でも、さしみは(食べます, 食べません)。

Sushi wa tabemasu. Demo, sashimi wa (tabemasu, tabemasen).

I eat sushi. However, I do not eat sashimi.

3. 母は日本人です。ですから、私は日本語を(話します, 話しません)。

Haha wa Nihon-jin desu. Desukara, watashi wa Nihon-go o (hanashimasu, hanashimasen).

My mother is Japanese. So, I speak Japanese.

4. 母は日本人です。でも、私は日本語を(話します, 話しません)。

Haha wa Nihon-jin desu. Demo, watashi wa Nihon-go o (hanashimasu, hanashimasen).

My mother is Japanese. However, I don't speak Japanese.

5. 去年は日本語を勉強しました。でも、漢字は勉強(しました, しませんでした)。

Kyonen wa Nihon-go o benkyō-shimashita. Demo, kanji wa benkyō-(shimashita, shimasendeshita).

I studied Japanese last year. However, I did not study kanji.

Expressing your plans

Here you will learn how to express your intentions and your future plans using the correct verb forms.

... つもりです **tsumori desu**

To say *I plan to* . . . , use a verb in the plain non-past form and add つもりです **tsumori desu**. You already know the plain non-past affirmative form, which is the dictionary form, introduced in Chapter 4. For example:

行くつもりです
Iku tsumori desu.
I plan to go.

The plain non-past negative form always ends in **nai**, so we call it the **nai** form for short. For example:

行かないつもりです
Ikanai tsumori desu.
I plan not to go.

Nai form

You make a **nai** form by dropping **ru** or **u** from the dictionary form and adding **nai** or **anai**. The following table lists representative **ru** verbs and **u** verbs as well as the two major irregular verbs in the dictionary form and the **nai** form. To conjugate a verb, find out its verb class (**ru** verb, **u** verb, or irregular verb) and check the ending of the dictionary form, and then follow the pattern of one of the verbs in the following table. Note that when a verb ends in a vowel directly followed by **u**, or in other words, when a verb ends in the hiragana う **u**, its **nai** form is formed by adding わない **wanai** after dropping the final う **u**. For example, the **nai** form of 買う **kau** (*buy*) is 買わない **kawanai**.

Verb Class	Ending of the Dictionary Form	Dictionary Form (Plain non-past affirmative)	Nai Form (Plain non-past negative)
Ru verb	-える -eru	かえる kaeru (<i>change</i>)	かえない kaenai
	-いる -iru	きる kiru (<i>wear</i>)	きない kinai
U verb	-す -su	はなす hanasu (<i>speak</i>)	はなさない hanasanai
	-く -ku	かく kaku (<i>write</i>)	かかない kakanai
	-ぐ -gu	およぐ oyogu (<i>swim</i>)	およがない oyoganai
	-む -mu	よむ yomu (<i>read</i>)	よまない yomanai
	-ぬ -nu	しぬ shinu (<i>die</i>)	しなない shinanai
	-ぶ -bu	とぶ tobu (<i>jump</i>)	とばない tobanai
	-う -vowel + u	かう kau (<i>buy</i>)	かわない kawanai
	-る -ru	きる kiru (<i>cut</i>)	きらない kiranai
	-つ -tsu	まつ matsu (<i>wait</i>)	またない matanai
Irregular verb		くる kuru (<i>come</i>)	こない konai
		する suru (<i>do</i>)	しない shinai

EXERCISE

5-11

Conjugate the following verbs into the **nai** form. The verb class is specified only when it is not predictable based on the ending sound of the verb.

- 飲む **nomu** _____
- うたう **utau** _____
- 見る **miru** (**ru** verb) _____
- 走る **hashiru** (**u** verb) _____
- 作る **tsukuru** _____
- 来る **kuru** _____
- する **suru** _____
- 行く **iku** _____
- 泳ぐ **oyogu** _____

10. 遊ぶ **asobu**

11. 待つ **matsu**

12. 話す **hanasu**

EXERCISE

5-12

Rephrase the following sentences using つもりです **tsumori desu**.

1. 来年日本に行きます。

Rainen Nihon ni ikimasu.

I will go to Japan next year.

2. 大学院には行きません。

Daigakuin ni wa ikimasen.

I won't go to graduate school.

3. 日曜日に掃除と洗濯と買い物をします。

Nichiyōbi ni sōji to sentaku to kaimono o shimasu.

I will do cleaning, laundry, and shopping on Sunday.

4. 今晩は寝ません。

Konban wa nemasen.

I won't sleep tonight.

Telling what you can do: Potential form

To say what you can do, you use a verb in the potential form. For **ru** verbs, drop the final **ru** from the dictionary form and add **rareru**. For example, たべる **taberu** (*to eat*) becomes たべられる **taberareru** (*to be able to eat*). For **u** verbs, drop the final **u** and add **eru**. For example, のむ **nomu** (*to drink*) becomes のめる **nomeru** (*to be able to drink*). The potential form of the verb くる **kuru** (*to come*) is こられる **korareru** (*to be able to come*). To express the potential form of the verb する **suru** (*to do*), use the verb できる **dekiru** (*to be able to do*). To convert a verb to the potential form, look at the following table and follow the pattern of the verb in the same class and with the same ending:

Verb Class	Ending of the Dictionary Form	Dictionary Form (Plain non-past affirmative)	Potential Form (to be able to do . . .)
Ru verb	-える -eru	かえる kaeru (<i>change</i>)	かえられる kaerareru
	-いる -iru	きる kiru (<i>wear</i>)	きられる kirareru
U verb	-す -su	はなす hanasu (<i>speak</i>)	はなせる hanaseru
	-く -ku	かく kaku (<i>write</i>)	かける kakeru
	-ぐ -gu	およぐ oyogu (<i>swim</i>)	およげる oyogeru
	-む -mu	よむ yomu (<i>read</i>)	よめる yomeru
	-ぬ -nu	しぬ shinu (<i>die</i>)	しねる shineru
	-ぶ -bu	とぶ tobu (<i>jump</i>)	とべる toberu
	-う -vowel + u	かう kau (<i>buy</i>)	かえる kaeru
	-る -ru	きる kiru (<i>cut</i>)	きれる kireru
	-つ -tsu	まつ matsu (<i>wait</i>)	まてる materu
Irregular verb		くる kuru (<i>come</i>)	こられる korareru
		する suru (<i>do</i>)	できる dekiru

A verb in the potential form can conjugate just like another **ru** verb. For example, the potential form of 食べる **taberu** (*to eat*) is 食べられる **taberareru** (*to be able to eat*). It can be conjugated to 食べられない **taberarenai** (*not to be able to eat*), and 食べられます **taberaremasu** (*to be able to eat, polite*), and 食べられません **taberaremasenn** (*not to be able to eat, polite*). The direct object particle を **o** is usually replaced by the particle が **ga** when the verb is in the potential form. For example:

カタカナで名前を書きます。
Katakana de namae o kakimasu.
I (will) write my name in katakana.

カタカナで名前が書けます。
Katakana de namae ga kakemasu.
I can write my name in katakana.

EXERCISE

5.13

Change the following verb phrases to mean to be able to do, by using the potential form.

1. カタカナを書く **katakana o kaku** (*to write katakana*)

2. カタカナで名前を書く **katakana de namae o kaku** (*to write one's name in katakana*)

3. 漢字を読む **kanji o yomu** (*to read kanji*)

4. 日本語を話す **Nihongo o hanasu** (to speak Japanese)

5. 日本語で話す **Nihongo de hanasu** (to speak in Japanese)

6. てんぷらを作る **tempura o tsukuru** (to make tempura)

7. 車を運転する **kuruma o unten-suru** (to drive a car)

EXERCISE

5-14

Answer the following questions in Japanese based on your situation. For a greater challenge, cover the English translations.

1. 箸で食べられますか。

Hashi de taberaremasu ka.

Can you eat with chopsticks?

2. お酒が飲めますか。

O-sake ga nomemasu ka.

Can you drink alcoholic beverages?

3. カタカナで名前が書けますか。

Katakana de namae ga kakemasu ka.

Can you write your name in katakana?

4. 漢字が読めますか。

Kanji ga yomemasu ka.

Can you read kanji characters?

Making requests

There are many different ways of making a request, but the most common way is to use the verb in the **te** form and add **ください kudasai**.

Te form

The **te** form ends in て **te** or で **de**. For example, the **te** form of かく **kaku** (*write*) is かいて **kaite**, and the **te** form of よむ **yomu** (*read*) is よんで **yonde**. The **te** form of a verb means *do . . . and*. It includes the meaning *and*. So, for example, かいて **kaite** means *write and*. To create the **te** form from a dictionary form, follow these rules:

- ◆ For **ru** verbs, drop the final る **ru** and add て **te**.
- ◆ For **u** verbs that end in す **su**, change the final syllable to して **shite**.
- ◆ For **u** verbs that end in く **ku**, change the final syllable to いて **ite**, and for **u** verbs that end in ぐ **gu**, change the final syllable to いで **ide**.
- ◆ For **u** verbs that end in う **u**, る **ru**, or つ **tsu**, change the final syllable to って **tte**.
- ◆ For **u** verbs that end in む **mu**, ぬ **nu**, or ぶ **bu**, change the final syllable to んで **nde**.
- ◆ The **u** verb いく **iku** is slightly irregular, and its **te** form is いて **itte**.
- ◆ The **te** form of くる **kuru** (*come*) is きて **kite**, and the **te** form of する **suru** (*do*) is して **shite**.

These rules are illustrated in the following table:

Verb Class	Ending of the Dictionary Form	Dictionary Form	Te Form
Ru verb	-える -eru	かえる kaeru (<i>change</i>)	かえて kaete
	-いる -iru	きる kiru (<i>wear</i>)	きて kite
U verb	-す -su	はなす hanasu (<i>speak</i>)	はなして hanashite
	-く -ku	かく kaku (<i>write</i>)	かいて kaite
	-ぐ -gu	およぐ oyogu (<i>swim</i>)	およいで oyoide
	-む -mu	よむ yomu (<i>read</i>)	よんで yonde
	-ぬ -nu	しぬ shinu (<i>die</i>)	しんで shinde
	-ぶ -bu	とぶ tobu (<i>jump</i>)	とんで tonde
	-う -vowel + u	かう kau (<i>buy</i>)	かって katte
	-る -ru	きる kiru (<i>cut</i>)	きって kitte
	-つ -tsu	まつ matsu (<i>wait</i>)	まって matte
Major irregular verb		くる kuru (<i>come</i>)	きて kite
		する suru (<i>do</i>)	して shite
Slightly irregular u verb		いく iku (<i>go</i>)	いて itte

You create the negative **te** form of a verb by replacing **nai** in its **nai** form with **nakute** (e.g., たべなくて **tabenakute** *not eat and*) or by adding **de** to its **nai** form (e.g., たべないで **tabenai de** *not eat and*). The **nai** form with **nakute** is used to express a cause-effect relationship, as in *not do . . . and so . . .*. The form with **nai de** is used to mean *not do . . . and then . . .*, which actually means *instead of doing . . .* or *without doing . . .*. The negative **te** form you should use depends on the context. See Chapter 8 for more about the **te** form.

Requesting with . . . てください **te kudasai**

ください **kudasai** literally means *please give it to me* when it follows a noun and を **o**. (See Chapter 3 for . . . をください **o kudasai** *please give me . . .*)

When it follows a verb in the **te** form, it means *Please do . . .* For example:

東京に行ってください。
Tōkyō ni itte kudasai.
Please go to Tokyo.

When you ask someone not to do something, use the negative **te** form that ends in **nai de**.
For example:

東京に行かないでください。
Tōkyō ni ikanai de kudasai.
Please do not go to Tokyo.

EXERCISE

5-15

Give the **te** form of each of the following verbs.

1. かく **kaku** (write) _____
2. かう **kau** (buy) _____
3. いう **iu** (say) _____
4. いく **iku** (go) _____
5. かつ **katsu** (win) _____
6. とぶ **tobu** (jump) _____
7. よむ **yomu** (read) _____
8. およぐ **oyogu** (swim) _____
9. する **suru** (do) _____
10. くる **kuru** (come) _____

EXERCISE

5-16

What do you say in Japanese if you want to ask someone to do the following?

1. 入る **hairu** (to enter)

2. 座る **suwaru** (to sit down)

3. 休む **yasumu** (to rest)

4. この手紙を読む **kono tegami o yomu** (to read this letter)

5. また来る **mata kuru** (*to come again*)

6. タバコをすわない **tabako o suwanai** (*not to smoke*)

7. しゃべらない **shaberanai** (*not to chat*)

8. 静かにする **shizuka ni suru** (*to be quiet*) (See Chapter 7 for the adverb + する **suru** *to do*)

Talking about “now” with . . . ている **te iru**

You know that the past tense shows what one did and the non-past tense shows what one will do or what one does as a habit. So how do you show an action progressing in the present? To express an action progressing, use a verb in the **te** form and add the verb いる **iru** (*exist*). In this case, いる **iru** is functioning as an auxiliary verb. This construction can also express an action taking place habitually and a state that results from an action.

Progressive state

. . . ている **te iru** can express the state where one is doing something such as eating, drinking, dancing, or studying. It is often used with an adverb like 今 **ima** (*now*). For example:

母は今てんぷらを作っています。

Haha wa ima tempura o tsukutte imasu.

My mother is making tempura now.

Habitual state

. . . ている **te iru** can also express what one does regularly. In this case, you can use an adverb for intervals like 毎日 **mainichi** (*every day*) to clarify the meaning. For example:

母は毎日ヨーグルトを食べています。

Haha wa mainichi yōguruto o tabete imasu.

My mother is eating yogurt every day.

Resulting state

. . . ている **te iru** can also express the state that results from a completed action. For example, even if one is not drinking currently, if he is drunk because he drank one hour ago, you can express his current state by using . . . ている **te iru** because the current intoxicated state resulted from the past action of drinking. For example:

兄はちょっと変です。お酒を飲んでいましたね。

Ani wa chotto hen desu. O-sake o nonde imasu ne.

My brother is weird. He is drunk, isn't he?

Adverbs for intervals

The following adverbs express intervals:

<i>every day</i>	毎日	mainichi
<i>every month</i>	毎月	maitsuki
<i>every morning</i>	毎朝	maiasa
<i>every night</i>	毎晩	maiban
<i>every week</i>	毎週	maishū
<i>every year</i>	毎年	maitoshi/mainen

Adverbs for the aspects of an action

The following adverbs relate to aspects of an action:

<i>continuously</i>	ずっと	zutto
<i>yet, still</i>	まだ	mada
<i>already</i>	もう	mō
<i>already</i>	すでに	sudeni

EXERCISE

5-17

What do the following sentences mean in English?

1. 妹は今テレビを見ています。

Imōto wa ima terebi o mite imasu.

2. 兄は毎朝 1 時間泳いでいます。

Ani wa maiasa ichi-jikan oyoide imasu.

3. 田中さんはまだ来ていません。

Tanaka-san wa mada kite imasen.

4. 父は大阪に行っています。

Chichi wa Ōsaka ni itte imasu.

5. 姉はもう結婚しています。

Ane wa mō kekkon shite imasu.

(結婚する **kekkon-suru** means *to get married*)

6. 弟は朝からずっとゲームをしています。

Otōto wa asa kara zutto gēmu o shite imasu.

EXERCISE

5-18

Describe in Japanese what your family members are doing now.

EXERCISE

5-19

Ken and Takako are talking. Read their dialog and answer the questions that follow.

KEN 貴子さんは週末はたいてい何をしていますか。

Takako-san wa shūmatsu wa taitei nani o shite imasu ka.

TAKAKO 週末は走ります。それから、テニスをします。それから、空手もします。

Shūmatsu wa hashirimasu. Sorekara, tenisu o shimasu. Sorekara, karate mo shimasu.

KEN へえ、すごいですね。僕はスポーツはぜんぜんしませんよ。

Hē, sugoi desu ne. Boku wa supōtsu wa zenzen shimasen yo.

(すごい **sugoi** means *Great!*)

TAKAKO そうですか。

Sō desu ka.

KEN はい。僕は週末はいつも料理をしています。

Hai. Boku wa shūmatsu wa itsumo ryōri o shite imasu.

TAKAKO え？料理を？

E? Ryōri o?

KEN はい。フランス料理もスペイン料理もできます。

Hai. Furansu-ryōri mo Supein-ryōri mo dekimasu.

TAKAKO すごい！

Sugoi!

KEN 今週の週末遊びに来ませんか。何か料理します。

Konshū no shūmatsu asobi ni kimasen ka. Nanika ryōri shimasu.

TAKAKO 本当に？

Hontō ni?

KEN ええ。

Ē.

TAKAKO うれしい!ありがとうございます。じゃあ, 私はワインを持って行きます。

Ureshiii! Arigatō gozaimasu. Jā, watashi wa wain o motte ikimasu.

KEN いいえ, 何も持って来ないでください。

Īe, nani mo motte konai de kudasai.

(持って行く/ 持って来る **motte iku/motte kuru** means *to bring something*)

1. What does Takako do on weekends?

2. What does Ken do on weekends?

3. What is Takako's plan for this weekend?

Talking about people and things and their locations

•6•

This chapter introduces existential verbs and shows how they are frequently used to express the existence of things and people or their locations. It also introduces a lot of words for animals, plants, and home-related terms such as rooms in a house and household items. You'll also learn how to give directions, how to express human relationships, and how to talk about events and incidents using existential verbs.

Existential verbs ある **aru**, いる **iru**, and いらっしゃる **irassharu**

The existential verbs ある **aru**, いる **iru**, and いらっしゃる **irassharu** are used to express the existence of something or someone as well as where he/she/it is. The person or thing that exists is the subject noun, and it is marked by the particle が **ga** unless it functions as a topic at the same time. On the other hand, the location where something or someone exists is marked by the particle に **ni**. ある **aru** (*to exist*) is used for inanimate items. ある **aru** is a slightly irregular **u** verb: its **nai** form is ない **nai**. いる **iru** (*to exist*) is used for animate items such as people and animals. It is a **ru** verb. いらっしゃる **irassharu** (*to exist*) is the polite version of いる **iru** and is used for people to whom the speaker wants to show respect, such as his teacher and boss. いらっしゃる **irassharu** is also a slightly irregular **u** verb: its stem form is いらっしゃる **irasshari** as you would correctly predict, but its **masu**-form is いらっしゃいます **irasshaimasu**. The major forms of these three existential verbs are summarized in the following table. The symbol * marks the slightly irregular forms.

Dictionary Form	ある aru	いる iru	いらっしゃる irassharu
Verb Class	u verb	ru verb	u verb
Nai Form	*ない nai	いない inai	いらっしゃらない irassharanai
Stem Form	あり ari	い i	いらっしゃる irasshari
Masu Form	あります arimasu	います imasu	*いらっしゃいます irasshaimasu
Te Form	あって atte	いて ite	いらっしゃって irasshatte

Pronouns for locations

The following demonstrative pronouns for locations are parallel to demonstrative pronouns for things discussed in Chapter 2:

<i>here</i>	ここ	koko
<i>there near you</i>	そこ	soko
<i>over there</i>	あそこ	asoko

Animals

動物 **dōbutsu** means *animal*. The following are words for some animals you may see in your neighborhood or at a zoo:

<i>dog</i>	犬	inu
<i>bear</i>	熊	kuma
<i>bird</i>	鳥	tori
<i>cat</i>	猫	neko
<i>cow</i>	牛	ushi
<i>deer</i>	鹿	shika
<i>elephant</i>	象	zō
<i>lion</i>	ライオン	raion
<i>goldfish</i>	金魚	kingyo
<i>horse</i>	馬	uma
<i>pig</i>	豚	buta
<i>rabbit</i>	兎	usagi
<i>squirrel</i>	りす	risu

Plants

植物 **shokubutsu** means *plant*. The following are words for some plants you may see in your backyard or at a park:

<i>bamboo</i>	竹	take
<i>carnation</i>	カーネーション	kānēshon
<i>cherry blossoms</i>	桜の花	sakura no hana
<i>cherry trees</i>	桜の木	sakura no ki
<i>chrysanthemum</i>	菊	kiku
<i>flower</i>	花	hana
<i>pine tree</i>	松の木	matsu no ki
<i>plum tree</i>	梅の木	ume no ki
<i>rose</i>	ばら	bara
<i>sunflower</i>	ひまわり	himawari
<i>tree</i>	木	ki
<i>tulip</i>	チューリップ	chūrippu

... に(は) ... があります/います ... ni (wa) ... ga arimasu/imasu

If you want to express the existence of something, such as say with surprise, “Look! There is a cherry tree over there!” or simply telling what is in some place, as in “There is a cherry tree in my yard,” use an existential verb and mark the item with the subject particle が **ga**. For example:

あそこに桜の木があります。
Asoko ni sakura no ki ga arimasu.
There is a cherry tree over there.

うちの裏庭には桜の木があります。
Uchi no uraniwa ni wa sakura no ki ga arimasu.
There is a cherry tree in my backyard.

The same applies to the verbs いる **iru** and いらっしゃる **irassharu**. For example:

あ!あそこに兎がいますよ。
A! Asoko ni usagi ga imasu yo.
Oh! There is a rabbit over there!

あそこに田中先生がいらっしゃいますね。
Asoko ni Tanaka sensei ga irasshaimasu ne.
Professor Tanaka is over there, isn't she?

... は ... にあります/います ... wa ... ni arimasu/imasu

If you want to express the location of something, use an existential verb and mark the item with the topic particle は **wa**. For example:

山田さんの店は桜通りにあります。
Yamada-san no mise wa Sakura-dōri ni arimasu.
Ms. Yamada's store is located on Sakura Street.

The same applies to いる **iru** and いらっしゃる **irassharu**. For example:

山田さんはあそこにいます。
Yamada-san wa asoko ni imasu.
Ms. Yamada is over there.

山田先生はあそこにいらっしゃいます。
Yamada-sensei wa asoko ni irasshaimasu.
Professor Yamada is over there.

So, if you want to ask the location of someone or something, say it and add は **wa**, and then say どこに **doko ni** and one of the existential verbs. For example:

田中さんはどこにいますか。
Tanaka-san wa doko ni imasu ka.
Where is Mr. Tanaka?

EXERCISE

6・1

Mach the items in the two columns.

- | | |
|---------------------------|-------------|
| 1. 犬 inu _____ | a. horse |
| 2. 猫 neko _____ | b. rabbit |
| 3. 馬 uma _____ | c. goldfish |
| 4. 金魚 kingyo _____ | d. dog |
| 5. 兎 usagi _____ | e. cat |

EXERCISE

6-2

Mach the items in the two columns.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. チューリップ chūrippu _____ | a. sunflower |
| 2. ばら bara _____ | b. tulip |
| 3. 桜の木 sakura no ki _____ | c. rose |
| 4. ひまわり himawari _____ | d. cherry tree |
| 5. カーネーション kānēshon _____ | e. chrysanthemum |
| 6. 菊 kiku _____ | f. carnation |

EXERCISE

6-3

For each of the following, choose the appropriate answer from the items in the parentheses.

1. あそこにレストランが(あります, います, いらっしやいます)。

Asoko ni resutoran ga (arimasu, imasu, irasshaimasu).

2. あそこに兎が(あります, います, いらっしやいます)。

Asoko ni usagi ba (arimasu, imasu, irasshaimasu).

3. あそこに女の子が(あります, います, いらっしやいます)。

Asoko ni onna no ko ga (arimasu, imasu, irasshaimasu).

4. あそこに先生が(あります, います, いらっしやいます)。

Asoko ni sensei ga (arimasu, imasu, irasshaimasu).

5. あそこに桜の木が(あります, います, いらっしやいます)。

Asoko ni sakura no ki ga (arimasu, imasu, irasshaimasu).

EXERCISE

6-4

What would you say in Japanese in the following situations?

1. You want to find out where Mt. Fuji is located.

2. You want to say that there are dogs in Ms. Yamada's house.

3. You want to know where Mr. Tanaka is.

4. Someone is wondering where Mr. Tanaka is, and you want to say that he is at the library.

5. You've just noticed Mary in the distance, and you want to tell your friend who is sitting next to you about it.

In a house

To express what you have or what you don't have in your house, start with **うちには uchi ni wa** and then the noun marked with the subject particle **が ga**, and end your sentence with an existential verb. You can also include a number phrase, as discussed in Chapter 3. For example:

うちには寝室が3つあります。

Uchi ni wa shinshitsu ga mittsu arimasu.

Our house has three bedrooms.

うちには車庫がありません。

Uchi ni wa shako ga arimasen.

We don't have a garage in our house.

うちには冷蔵庫が2台あります。

Uchi ni wa reizōko ga ni-dai arimasu.

We have two refrigerators in our house.

Rooms and areas in a house

In almost all Japanese houses, people take off their shoes at the entryway. They might have Japanese-style rooms and/or Western-style rooms. The Japanese style is to have the toilet in a separate room from the bathing room. The following terms are used for rooms and areas in a house:

attic*	屋根裏部屋	yaneurabeya
basement*	地下室	chikashitsu
bathroom (for bathing)	風呂場	furoba
bathroom (toilet room)	お手洗い / トイレ	otearai / toire
bedroom	寝室	shinshitsu
dining room	ダイニング / 食堂	dainingu / shokudō
entryway	玄関	genkan
garage	車庫	shako
Japanese-style room	和室	washitsu
kitchen	キッチン / 台所	kitchin / daidokoro
living room	リビング / 居間	ribingu / ima
office	書斎	shosai
closet for futon and other items	押入れ	oshiire
room	部屋	heya
sunroom*	サンルーム	sanrūmu
Western-style room	洋室	yōshitsu
yard/garden	庭	niwa

*Japanese houses rarely have a basement, an attic, or a sunroom.

Household items

Do you have the following items in your home or apartment?

TV	テレビ	terebi
car	車	kuruma
computer, PC	パソコン	pasokon
dryer	乾燥機	kansōki
microwave	電子レンジ	denshi renji
printer	プリンター	purintā
refrigerator	冷蔵庫	reizōko
sofa	ソファ	sofā
table	テーブル	tēburu
washer	洗濯機	sentakuki

Things in a bedroom

The following terms are used for things in a bedroom:

bed	ベッド	beddo
bookshelf	本箱／本棚	honbako/hondana
chair	椅子	isu
chest of drawers	たんす	tansu
computer, PC	パソコン	pasokon
desk	机	tsukue
doll	人形	ningyō
trash can	ごみ箱	gomibako
vase	花瓶	kabin

EXERCISE

6-5

Write the following words in Japanese.

1. TV _____
2. refrigerator _____
3. bed _____
4. chair _____
5. desk _____

EXERCISE

6-6

Answer the following questions for your own situation.

1. (あなたの)うちにはテレビが何台ありますか。

(Anata no) uchi ni wa terebi ga nan-dai arimasu ka.

2. 冷蔵庫は何台ありますか。

Reizōko wa nan-dai arimasu ka.

3. パソコンは何台ありますか。

Pasokon wa nan-dai arimasu ka.

EXERCISE

6-7

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. *There are three TVs at Mike's house.*

2. *There is no yard in Ms. Mori's house.*

3. *There is a basement room in Mary's house.*

4. *There is no washer and dryer in George's apartment.*

EXERCISE

6-8

Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow.

私の部屋には机が一つとベッドが一つと椅子が3つあります。それから本箱が一つとテーブルが1つあります。雑誌が5冊あります。それから漫画とゲームソフトがたくさんあります。

Watashi no heya ni wa tsukue ga hito-tsu to beddo ga hito-tsu to isu ga mit-tsu arimasu. Sorekara honbako ga hito-tsu to tēburu ga hito-tsu arimasu. Zasshi ga go-satsu? arimasu. Sorekara manga to gēmusofuto ga takusan arimasu.

1. How many chairs are there?

2. How many tables are there?

3. How many magazines are there?

Describe what you have in your room.

Expressing where things are

You can describe where things are relative to other things by using relative location words or compass directions.

Relative location words

To describe the location of things and buildings, use relative location words, such as 上 **ue** (*top/upper area*) or 近く **chikaku** (*nearby area*), along with the reference item. For example:

雑誌はテーブルの上にあります。

Zasshi wa tēburu no ue ni arimasu.

The magazines are on the table.

銀行は駅の近くに 있습니다。

Ginkō wa eki no chikaku ni arimasu.

The bank is near the train station.

The following table lists a number of relative location words and provides examples of their use:

English	Japanese	Example Sentences
<i>top/upper area</i>	上 ue	辞書は机の上にあります。 Jisho wa tsukue no ue ni arimasu. <i>The dictionary is on the desk.</i>
<i>bottom/lower area</i>	下 shita	猫はテーブルの下にいます。 Neko wa tēburu no shita ni imasu. <i>The cat is under the table.</i>
<i>inside</i>	中 naka	携帯はかばんの中にあります。 Keitai wa kaban no naka ni arimasu. <i>The cell phone is in the bag.</i>
<i>right</i>	右 migi	かばんは机の右にあります。 Kaban wa tsukue no migi ni arimasu. <i>The bag is on the right of the desk.</i>
<i>left</i>	左 hidari	かばんは机の左にあります。 Kaban wa tsukue no hidari ni arimasu. <i>The bag is on the left of the desk.</i>

English	Japanese	Example Sentences
<i>front</i>	前 mae	田中さんは山田さんの前にいます。 Tanaka-san wa Yamada-san no mae ni imasu. <i>Mr. Tanaka is in front of Ms. Yamada.</i>
<i>rear, back</i>	後ろ ushiro	高橋さんは山田さんの後ろにいます。 Takahashi-san wa Yamada-san no ushiro ni imasu. <i>Mr. Takahashi is behind Ms. Yamada.</i>
<i>between</i>	間 aida	郵便局は病院と銀行の間にあります。 Yūbinkyoku wa byōin to ginkō no aida ni arimasu. <i>The post office is between the hospital and the bank.</i>
<i>vicinity, near</i>	近く chikaku , そば soba	本屋は大学の近くにあります。 Hon'ya wa daigaku no chikaku ni arimasu. 本屋は大学のそばにあります。 Hon'ya wa daigaku no soba ni arimasu. <i>The bookstore is near the university.</i>
<i>side</i>	横 yoko	本箱は机の横にあります。 Honbako wa tsukue no yoko ni arimasu. <i>The bookcase is on the side of the desk.</i>
<i>next to</i>	隣 tonari	マイクさんは私の隣にいます。 Maiku-san wa watashi no tonari ni imasu. <i>Mike is next to me.</i> 銀行はスーパーの隣にあります。 Ginkō wa sūpā no tonari ni arimasu. <i>The bank is next to the supermarket.</i>

Compass directions

The following terms are used for compass directions:

<i>north</i>	北	kita
<i>south</i>	南	minami
<i>east</i>	東	higashi
<i>west</i>	西	nishi

EXERCISE

6-10

Translate the following sentences about someone's room into Japanese.

1. The bookcase is on the side of the desk.

2. The desk is in front of the window.

(窓 **mado** means window)

3. The dictionary is in the drawer of the desk.

4. The sofa is between the desk and the bed.

EXERCISE

6-11

Translate the following sentences about a town into Japanese.

1. The post office is on the south of the university.

2. The restaurant is between the hospital and the bookstore.

3. The bank is next to the city hall.

4. My apartment is near the elementary school.

EXERCISE

6-12

Read the following passage written by Keiko and answer the questions that follow.

駅は町の中心にあります。郵便局は小学校の北にあります。消防署は小学校の前にあります。病院は三番通りにあります。図書館も三番通りにあります。銀行は桜通りにあります。スーパーは病院の隣にあります。私のうちからスーパーまで自転車で5分です。

Eki wa machi no chūshin ni arimasu. Yūbinkyoku wa shōgakkō no kita ni arimasu. Shōbōsho wa shōgakkō no mae ni arimasu. Byōin wa sanban-dōri ni arimasu. Toshokan mo sanban-dōri ni arimasu. Ginkō wa Sakura-dōri ni arimasu. Sūpā wa byōin no tonari ni arimasu. Watashi no uchi kara sūpā made jitensha de go-fun desu.

(駅 **eki** means *train station*; 町 **machi** means *town*; 中心 **chūshin** means *center*; ... 通り **dōri** means ... *Street*)

1. Where is the train station?

2. Where is the bank located?

3. How long does it take to go from Keiko's house to the supermarket?

Giving directions

To give directions in Japanese, you must know some words for landmarks such as 交差点 **kōsaten** (*intersection*) and 橋 **hashi** (*bridge*) along with the ordinal counter creator . . . 目 **me** (. . . *th*). You must also know some verbs of movement such as 曲がる **magaru** (*to make a turn*) and 渡る **wataru** (*to cross*). It is helpful to connect sentences in your directions with conjunctions such as それから **sorekara** and そうすると **sōsuruto**; both of them mean *then* with different usage.

Useful landmarks for giving directions

The following are some words for landmarks you may need in giving directions:

bridge	橋	hashi
bus stop	バス停	basu-tē
corner	角	kado
end of the street	つきあたり	tsukiatarari
intersection	交差点	kōsaten
koban (police box)	交番	kōban
railway crossing	踏み切り	fumikiri
road	道	michi
stop sign	一時停止	ichji-tēshi
straight	まっすぐ	massugu
street	通り	tōri
... Street	... 通り	... dōri
traffic light	信号	shingō
train station	駅	eki

Actions needed for giving directions

The following are some verbs for movement you may need in giving directions:

to cross	渡る	wataru
to go	行く	iku
to make a turn	曲がる	magaru
to pass	過ぎる	sugiru
to walk	歩く	aruku

Marking the area covered by movement with を o

The particle を **o** can be used with a verb that expresses movement such as going, crossing, turning, or passing. For example:

この道をまっすぐ行ってください。
Kono michi o massugu itte kudasai.
Please go straight on this street.

Marking the direction with に ni

The particle に **ni** can mark the direction for movement, such as *to the right*, *to the left*, *to the north*, and *to the south*. For example:

右に曲がってください。
Migi ni magatte kudasai.
Please make a right turn.

The conjunction そうすると **sōsuruto** (*then*)

そうすると **sōsuruto** can show “automatic results,” or something that always happens when used in the non-past tense. For example:

この道をまっすぐ行ってください。そうすると、右に銀行があります。
Kono michi o massugu itte kudasai. Sōsuruto, migi ni ginkō ga arimasu.
Please go straight on this road. Then you'll see a bank on your right.

The ordinal counter creator . . . 目 **me**

To say *first, second, third*, etc., you can add 目 **me** to any numeral-counter combination. For example:

3冊目の本
san-satsu-me no hon
the third book

2つ目の交差点
futa-tsu-me no kōsaten
the second intersection

EXERCISE

6-13

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. *Please go straight on this street.*

2. *Please make a left turn at that intersection.*

3. *Please pass the bus stop.*

4. *Please cross that bridge.*

5. *Please make a right turn at the third corner.*

Following are directions to Michiko's house. Complete them with the correct particles. Note that the demonstrative adjective *その sono* can be used for things that the people conversing cannot see but that the speaker knows about and mentions in the discourse.

この道をまっすぐ行ってください。それから三つ目 _____ 交差点を右 _____ 曲がってください。そうすると踏み切りがあります。その踏み切り _____ 渡ってください。それから5分ぐらい歩いてください。そうすると右にパン屋 _____ あります。私のアパートはそのパン屋の隣にあります。

Kono michi o massugu itte kudasai. Sorekara mit-tsu me _____ kōsaten o migi _____ magatte kudasai. Sōsuruto fumikiri ga arimasu. Sono fumikiri _____ watatte kudasai. Sorekara go-fun gurai aruite kudasai. Sōsuruto migi ni pan'ya _____ arimasu. Watashi no apāto wa sono pan'ya no tonari ni arimasu.

Expressing human relationships

You can use *いる iru* to express what human relationships you have. For example:

私は日本人の友達が3人います。

Watashi wa Nihon-jin no tomodachi ga san-nin imasu.

I have three Japanese friends.

The following words describe human relationships:

friend	友達	tomodachi
acquaintance	知人	chijin
aunt	おば／おばさん	oba/obasan
best friend	親友	shin'yū
boyfriend	彼	kare
cousin	いとこ	itoko
fiancé	婚約者／フィアンセ	kon'yakusha/fianse
girlfriend	彼女	kanojo
grandfather	祖父／おじいさん	sofu/ojisan
grandmother	祖母／おばあさん	sobo/obāsan
relatives	親戚	shinseki
siblings	兄弟	kyōdai
uncle	おじ／おじさん	oji/ojisan

EXERCISE

6-15

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 私は妹が二人います。

Watashi wa imōto ga futari imasu.

2. 私は妹が二人と弟が一人います。

Watashi wa imōto ga futari to otōto ga hitori imasu.

3. 山田さんは兄弟がいますか。

Yamada-san wa kyōdai ga imasu ka.

4. 私は兄弟がいません。

Watashi wa kyōdai ga imasen.

5. 兄は婚約者がいます。

Ani wa kon'yakusha ga imasu.

6. チェンさんはいところが 30 人います。

Chen-san wa itoko ga san-jū-nin imasu.

EXERCISE

6-16

Read the following dialog between Keiko and Mary and answer the questions that follow.

KEIKO メアリーさんは兄弟がいますか。

Meari-san wa kyōdai ga imasu ka.

MARY いいえ, いません。

Īe, imasen.

KEIKO ああ。じゃあ, 一人っ子ですか。

Ā. Jā, hitorikko desu ka.

MARY はい。恵子さんは?

Hai. Keiko-san wa?

KEIKO 私は姉が二人と妹が一人います。
Watashi wa ane ga futari to imōto ga hitori imasu.

MARY え。本当ですか。
E. Hontō desu ka.

KEIKO はい。
Hai.

MARY いいですね。
li desu ne.

KEIKO メアリーさんはいそこはいますか。
Meari-san wa itoko wa imasu ka.

MARY いそこは一人います。
Itoko wa hitori imasu.

1. How many siblings does Mary have?

2. What do you think the underlined part of the dialog means?

3. How many cousins does Mary have?

4. How many siblings does Keiko have?

Expressing events and incidents

By using the verb ある **aru**, you can express events and incidents. Note that the locations of events and incidents are marked by で **de** rather than by に **ni** even though an existential verb is used. For example:

今日は大阪で面接があります。
Kyō wa Ōsaka de mensetsu ga arimasu in.
I have an interview today in Osaka.

今朝仙台で地震がありました。
Kesa Sendai de jishin ga arimashita.
There was an earthquake in Sendai this morning.

Some natural disasters are expressed using verbs such as 来る **kuru** (come), なる **naru** (become), おきる **okiru** (occur/take place), and 発生する **hassei suru** (occur/take place).

Words for scheduled events

The following terms are used to describe commonly occurring events:

<i>exam</i>	試験	<i>shiken</i>
<i>class</i>	授業	<i>jugyō</i>
<i>conference</i>	会議	<i>kaigi</i>
<i>date</i>	デート	<i>dēto</i>
<i>interview</i>	面接	<i>mensetsu</i>
<i>part-time job</i>	バイト	<i>baito</i>
<i>party</i>	パーティー	<i>pāti</i>
<i>work/job</i>	仕事	<i>shigoto</i>

Words for accidents, incidents, and disasters

The following terms are used to describe unscheduled events, such as accidents, incidents, and disasters:

<i>fire</i>	火事, 火災	<i>kaji, kasai</i>
<i>accident</i>	事故	<i>jiko</i>
<i>disaster</i>	災害	<i>saigai</i>
<i>earthquake</i>	地震	<i>jishin</i>
<i>explosion</i>	爆発	<i>bakuhatsu</i>
<i>flooding</i>	洪水	<i>kōzui</i>
<i>mountain fire</i>	山火事	<i>yama-kaji</i>
<i>storm</i>	嵐	<i>arashi</i>
<i>tornado</i>	竜巻	<i>tatsumaki</i>
<i>tsunami</i>	津波	<i>tsunami</i>

The conjunction **それで** *sorede* (as a result)

それで *sorede* shows an *expected result* or *resulting decision*. Do not use it to express commands, requests, suggestions, invitations, conjectures, or the speaker's volition.

大阪で会議がありました。それで大阪に一週間いました。
Ōsaka de kaigi ga arimashita. Sorede Ōsaka ni is-shūkan imashita.
There was a conference in Osaka. So I was in Osaka for one week.

仙台で大きい地震がありました。それで津波が来ました。
Sendai de ōkii jishin ga arimashita. Sorede tsunami ga kimashita.
There was a big earthquake in Sendai. As a result, a tsunami hit there.

EXERCISE

6-17

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 今日は授業が3つあります。ですから仕事には行きません。

Kyō wa jugyō ga mittsu arimasu. Desukara shigoto ni wa ikimasen.

2. 今日は仕事がありません。ですからいっしょに買い物に行きませんか。

Kyō wa shigoto ga arimasen. Desukara isshoni kaimono ni ikimasen ka.

3. 明日は面接と試験があります。それで今日はどこにも行けません。

Ashita wa mensetsu to shiken ga arimasu. Sorede kyō wa doko ni mo ikemasen.

EXERCISE

6-18

Read the following paragraph written by Seiji and answer the questions that follow.

月曜日と水曜日と金曜日は日本語のクラスがあります。9時から10時までです。金曜日の晩は日本のレストランでバイトがあります。5時から10時までです。

Getsuyōbi to Suiyōbi to Kinyōbi wa Nihon-go no kurasu ga arimasu. Ku-ji kara jū-ji made desu. Kinyōbi no ban wa Nihon no resutoran de baito ga airmasu. Go-ji kara jū-ji made desu.

(...から **kara** ...まで **made** means *from ... to ...*)

1. Which days does Seiji have classes?

2. Which days does he have to work?

3. From what time to what time does he have to work?

EXERCISE

6-19

List your weekly schedule in Japanese.

Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow.

2011 年3月11日に日本の東北地方の近くの太平洋沖でマグニチュード9の地震がおきました。それで東北地方に大きい津波が来ました。火災も原子力発電所の事故もおきました。

Ni-sen-jū-ichi-nen san-gatsu jū-ichi-nichi ni Nihon no Tōhoku Chihō no chikaku no Taiheiyō oki de magunichūdo kyū no jishin ga okimashita. Sorede Tōhoku Chihō ni ōkii tsunami ga kimashita. Kasai mo genshiryoku hatsudensho no jiko mo okimashita.

(東北地方 **Tōhoku Chihō** means *Tohoku Region*, the northeastern portion of Honshu in Japan; 太平洋 **Taiheiyō** means *Pacific Ocean*; 沖 **oki** means *open sea*; 原子力発電所 **genshiryoku hatsudensho** means *nuclear power plant*)

1. When did the earthquake occur?

2. Where did it occur?

3. What was the result?

Describing things

7

This chapter shows you how to describe people and things using adjectives in a variety of contexts. You'll learn how to describe buildings and rooms, a person's character and appearance, places and seasons, meals and flavors, and clothing. You'll also learn about adverbs derived from adjectives and comparisons.

Adjective types

Every Japanese adjective ends in い *i* or な *na* when placed before a noun. The adjectives that end in い *i* are called *i adjectives* and those that end in な *na* are called *na adjectives*. For example, 高い本 **takai hon** and 高価な本 **kōka na hon** both mean *an expensive book*, but 高い is an *i* adjective and 高価な is a *na* adjective. The part of the adjective without the ending い *i* or な *na* (e.g., 高 **taka** and 高価 **kōka**) is called the *stem*. 大きい **ōkii** and 小さい **chīsai** are slightly exceptional. They are *i* adjectives, but when used before a noun, they have additional forms: 大きな **ōki na** and 小さな **chīsa na**.

Adjectives can also be used to end a sentence. For *i* adjectives, keep the い *i* and add です **desu**. For *na* adjectives, add です **desu** right after the stem, without な *na* before です **desu**.

EXERCISE

7.1

In each of the following sentences, drop the noun and make the appropriate changes to the adjective, as shown in the examples.

EXAMPLE

大きい犬です。 **Ōkii inu desu.** (*It's a big dog.*)

大きいです。 **Ōkii desu.** (*It's big.*)

静かな犬です。 **Shizuka na inu desu.** (*It's a quiet dog.*)

静かです。 **Shizuka desu.** (*It's quiet.*)

1. 新しい車です。 **Atarashii kuruma desu.** (*It's a new car.*)

2. きれいな人です。 **Kirei na hito desu.** (*She is a pretty person.*)

3. にぎやかなところです。 **Nigiyaka na tokoro desu.** (*It's a crowded and lively place.*)

4. 難しい漢字です。 **Muzukashii kanji desu.** (*It's a difficult kanji character.*)

5. おいしいケーキです。 **Oishii kēki desu.** (*It's a delicious cake.*)

Describing buildings and rooms

Here you will learn how to use adjectives to describe buildings and rooms, and you'll learn what to say when you enter someone's house or apartment.

Adjectives in the non-past forms

See how adjectives pattern in a non-past neutral-polite context in the following table:

	I Adjectives (e.g., 高い takai <i>expensive</i>)	Na Adjectives (e.g., 高価な kōka na <i>expensive</i>)
Affirmative	Stem + いです Stem + i desu 高いです takai desu <i>is expensive</i>	Stem + です Stem + desu 高価です kōka desu <i>is expensive</i>
Negative	Stem + くありません Stem + ku arimasen <i>or</i> Stem + くないです Stem + ku nai desu 高くありません takaku arimasen 高くないです takaku nai desu <i>isn't expensive</i>	Stem + じゃありません Stem + ja arimasen* <i>or</i> Stem + じゃないです Stem + ja nai desu* 高価じゃありません kōka ja arimasen 高価じゃないです kōka ja nai desu <i>isn't expensive</i>

The negative form of いいです **ii desu** (*is good*) is よくありません **yoku arimasen** or よくないです **yoku nai desu** (*isn't good*).

*じゃ **ja** in negative forms can be では **de wa**.

Describing buildings

The following adjectives are useful for describing the appearance of buildings:

<i>big</i>	大きい	ōkii
<i>low</i>	低い	hikui
<i>new</i>	新しい	atarashii
<i>old</i>	古い	furui
<i>small</i>	小さい	chīsai
<i>tall</i>	高い	takai

Remember that 古い **furui** (*old*) is used only for things and not for people or animals to mean their age.

Describing rooms

The following adjectives are useful for describing a room:

<i>bright</i>	明るい	akarui
<i>dark</i>	暗い	kurai
<i>dirty</i>	汚い	kitanai
<i>non-spacious (small)</i>	せまい	semai
<i>pretty/clean</i>	きれいな	kirei na
<i>quiet</i>	しずかな	shizuka na
<i>spacious</i>	広い	hiroii

Encouraging someone to do something with どうぞ dōzo

どうぞ **dōzo** is an adverb used to encourage a person to do an action. It means *Please* or *Please go ahead and do (it)*. For example:

どうぞ入ってください。

Dōzo haitte kudasai.

Please come in.

どうぞ座ってください。

Dōzo suwatte kudasai.

Please sit down.

どうぞ受け取ってください。

Dōzo uketotte kudasai.

Please take (literally receive) it.

Often when you're encouraging someone to do something, you use gestures or hold out something to the person, so there's no need to complete the sentence: You can simply say どうぞ **dōzo**.

Entering your friend's house with おじゃまします ojashimasu

When you enter someone's house or apartment room, say おじゃまします **ojashimasu** as you walk in or right before you step in the room. Its literal meaning is *I will disturb you*, but it is understood as *I'm coming in!* rather than something negative.

EXERCISE

7-2

Write the phrase that means the opposite of each of the following, as shown in the example.

EXAMPLE

広いです **hiroi desu** (*is spacious*)

せまいです **semai desu**

1. 新しいです **atarashii desu** (*is new*) _____
2. きれいです **kirei desu** (*is pretty*) _____
3. 低いです **hikui desu** (*is low*) _____
4. 暗いです **kurai desu** (*is dark*) _____
5. 小さいです **chīsai desu** (*is small*) _____

EXERCISE

7-3

Answer the following questions negatively, as shown in the example.

EXAMPLE

田中さんの部屋はきれいですか。

Tanaka-san no heya wa kirei desu ka.

Is Mr. Tanaka's room pretty?

いいえ、きれいじゃありません。Īe, kirei ja arimasen. *No, it is not pretty.*

1. 田中さんのアパートは新しいですか。

Tanaka-san no apāto wa atarashii desu ka.

Is Mr. Tanaka's apartment new?

2. あのレストランは静かですか。

Ano resutoran wa shizuka desu ka.

Is that restaurant quiet?

3. 寮の部屋は広いですか。

Ryō no heya wa hiroi desu ka.

Is the dormitory room big?

Emiko is entering Alison's apartment for the first time. Complete their dialog with the appropriate words.

ALISON ああ, 恵美子さん! どうぞ!

Ā, Emiko-san! Dōzo!

EMIKO おじゃまします。

Ojamashimasu!

きれいな部屋ですね。

Kirei na heya desu ne.

ALISON そうですか。

Sō desu ka.

EMIKO ええ。_____ですよ。それに広いですね。

Ē. _____ desu yo. Soreni hiroi desu ne.

ALISON そうですか。

Sō desu ka.

Character of a person

This section introduces many useful adjectives for describing a person's character and personality. You will also learn degree adverbs that can be used along with them as well as question words that can ask about such properties.

Personality

The following adjectives are useful for describing a person's character and personality:

interesting/funny

kind

lively

quiet

scary

selfish

sensitive

serious

smart

strict

thoughtful

面白い

やさしい

にぎやかな

静かな

こわい

わがままな

繊細な

まじめな

頭がいい

厳しい

親切的な

omoshiroi

yasashii

nigiyaka na

shizuka na

kowai

wagamama na

sensai na

majime na

atama ga ii

kibishii

shinsetsu na

Question words for state: どんな donna and どう dō

To ask the state of someone or something, use どんな **donna** (*what kind of*) or どう **dō** (*how*). Before a noun, use どんな **donna**; otherwise, use どう **dō**. For example:

新しいルームメートはどうですか。
Atarashii rūmumēto wa dō desu ka.
How is the new roommate?

新しいルームメートはどんな人ですか。
Atarashii rūmumēto wa donna hito desu ka.
What kind of person is the new roommate?

Adverbs of degree

Commonly used degree adverbs are listed here:

<i>very much</i>	とても	totemo
<i>more or less</i>	まあまあ	māmā
<i>a little bit</i>	ちょっと	chotto
<i>not . . . very much</i>	あまり	amari
<i>not . . . at all</i>	ぜんぜん	zenzen

あまり **amari** and ぜんぜん **zenzen** must be used with a negative form of an adjective, regardless of the meaning of the adjective. By contrast, ちょっと **chotto** and まあまあ **māmā** must be used with an affirmative form of an adjective, but ちょっと **chotto** must be used with an adjective that has an unpleasant or unfavorable meaning, and まあまあ **māmā** must be used with an adjective that has a pleasant or favorable meaning.

EXERCISE

7-5

For each of the following, choose the correct answer from the options in parentheses.

1. 田中さんの彼女は(どんな, どう)人ですか。

Tanaka-san no kanojo wa (donna, dō) hito desu ka.

What kind of person is Mr. Tanaka's girlfriend?

2. 新しいマネージャーは(どんな, どう)ですか。

Atarashii manējā wa (donna, dō) desu ka.

How is the new manager?

(マネージャー **manējā** means *manager*)

3. (どんな, どう)人と結婚したいですか。

(Donna, Dō) hito to kekkon-shi-tai desu ka.

What kind of person do you want to get married to?

(...と結婚する **to kekkon-suru** means *to get married to* ...)

EXERCISE

7・6

Answer the following questions negatively, as shown in the example.

EXAMPLE

きれいですか。 **Kirei desu ka.** Is (she) pretty?

いいえ, きれいじゃありません。 **Īe, kirei ja arimasen.**

1. 親切ですか。 **Shinsetsu desu ka.** Is (he/she) kind?

2. 優しいですか。 **Yasashii desu ka.** Is (he/she) kind?

3. まじめですか。 **Majime desu ka.** Is (he/she) serious?

4. 静かですか。 **Shizuka desu ka.** Is (he/she) quiet?

EXERCISE

7・7

For each of the following, choose the correct answer from the options in parentheses.

1. 父は(まあまあ, ちょっと)やさしいです。

Chichi wa (māmā, chotto) yasashii desu.

2. 母は(ぜんぜん, ちょっと)こわくありません。

Haha wa (zenzen, chotto) kowaku arimasen.

3. 兄は(まあまあ, ちょっと, あまり)わがままです。

Ani wa (māmā, chotto, amari) wagamama desu.

4. 姉は(とても, あまり)まじめです。

Ane wa (totemo, amari) majime desu.

EXERCISE

7・8

Describe the character of your family members as much as you can.

Appearance of a person

This section introduces useful adjectives for describing a person's appearance. You can describe a person very generally, as in *She is pretty*, or more specifically, as in *She has pretty eyes*. So, you need to know both ways.

Double subject

You may need to narrow down the scope of the adjective a little bit when describing someone's appearance. For example, say that you do not think a person is pretty in general, but you think she has beautiful eyes. In this case, say . . . は目がきれいです。 **wa me ga kirei desu**. It is as if there are two subjects: One is treated as the topic and is marked by は **wa**, and the other appears after it, with the particle が **ga**. For example, you can say:

美智子さんは目がきれいです。
Michiko-san wa me ga kirei desu.
Michiko has beautiful eyes.

The previous sentence has basically the same meaning as the following sentence:

美智子さんの目はきれいです。
Michiko-san no me wa kirei desu.
Michiko's eyes are pretty.

However, these two sentences differ in terms of what the speaker is talking about. The first one is about Michiko. The speaker is probably trying to describe what kind of person Michiko is. The second sentence is about Michiko's eyes. The speaker is talking about Michiko's eyes for some reason.

Words for describing the appearance of people

The appearance of people can sometimes be expressed using simple adjectives, but it may require a complex adjective phrase (. . . **wa . . . ga . . . desu**) or a complex verb phrase that ends in the auxiliary verb いる **iru**, even if the same state can be expressed by a single English word. (See Chapter 5 for more about the auxiliary verb いる **iru**.)

The following words and phrases are useful for describing someone's appearance:

overweight	太っている	futotte iru
has a long nose (literally, tall/high nose)	鼻が高い	hana ga takai
has a small nose (literally, low/flat nose)	鼻が低い	hana ga hikui
has a thick head of hair	髪が多い	kami ga ōi
has a thin head of hair	髪が少ない	kami ga sukunai
has big eyes	目が大きい	me ga ōkii
has long hair	髪が長い	kami ga nagai
has short hair	髪が短い	kami ga mijikai
has small eyes	目が小さい	me ga chīsai
pretty	きれいな	kirei na
short	背が低い	se ga hikui
skinny	やせている	yasete iru
tall	背が高い	se ga takai

EXERCISE

7・9

Complete the following sentences appropriately.

1. 幸子さんは _____ です。

Sachiko-san wa _____ desu.

Sachiko is tall.

2. デイビッドさんは _____。

Deibiddo-san wa _____.

David is skinny.

3. メアリーさんは _____。

Meari-san wa _____.

Mary has short hair.

4. ジョージさんは _____。

Jōji-san wa _____.

George is short.

EXERCISE

7・10

Describe the appearance of your family members as much as you can.

EXERCISE

7・11

Choose the appropriate answer from the options in parentheses in the following dialog between George and Mike.

GEORGE マイクさんの彼女は(どう, どんな, だれ)人ですか。

Maiku-san no kanojo wa (dō, donna, dare) hito desu ka.

MIKE とても(やさしい, 広い, 狭い)人です。

Totemo (yasashii, hiroi, semai) hito desu.

GEORGE きれいですか。

Kirei desu ka.

MIKE はい、(まあまあ、ちょっと)きれいです。

Hai, (māmā, chotto) kirei desu.

GEORGE ああ、そうですか。いいですね。

Ā, sō desu ka. Ii desu ne.

Language learning

Here you'll learn how to describe learning. You'll learn how to express degree of difficulty, paying attention to specific aspects of learning in a variety of learning contexts. In addition, you'll learn the conjunctions それに **soreni** to provide a thorough and objective description of learning.

Expressing degree of difficulty with . . . にくい **nikui** and . . . やすい **yasui**

To say that something is difficult or easy to do, use the verb in the stem form (pre-**masu** form) and add にくい **nikui** if it is difficult or やすい **yasui** if it is easy. For example, 書きにくいです **kaki-nikui desu** means *it is difficult to write*, and 書きやすいです **kaki-yasui desu** means *it is easy to write*. The combination of the verb stem and にくい **nikui** or やすい **yasui** can be treated as a complex i-adjective. So, you can conjugate it just like an i-adjective. For example:

書きやすくありません。

Kaki-yasuku arimasen.

It is not easy to write.

これは書きやすい漢字ですね。

Kore wa kaki-yasui kanji desu ne.

This one is an easy-to-write kanji.

Words for describing courses

Some people learn languages in a classroom, and others learn by themselves, using books and audiovisual materials. To describe courses or learning experiences, use the following words and phrases:

conversation

difficult

difficult to remember

easy

exam

has a lot of . . .

has little . . .

homework

listening comprehension

pronunciation

quiz

reading and writing

会話

難しい

覚えにくい

簡単な

試験

...が多い

...が少ない

宿題

聞き取り

発音

小テスト

読み書き

kaiwa

muzukashii

oboe-nikui

kantan na

shiken

... ga ōi

... ga sukunai

shukudai

kiki-tori

hatsuon

shōtesuto

yomi-kaki

Do not use 多い **ōi** and 少ない **sukunai** as a modifier placed right before a noun (prenominal modifier). Rather, use them only at the end of the sentence, as a sentence predicates. For example, do not say 多い試験があります **Ōi shiken ga arimasu**, but say 試験が多いです **Shiken ga ōi desu** to mean *There are a lot of exams*.

The conjunction それに **soreni**

When you are providing additional information about the idea you've been talking about, use それに **soreni**. For example:

日本語は簡単です。それに、面白いです。
Nihongo wa kantan desu. Soreni, omoshiroi desu.
Japanese is easy. In addition, it is interesting.

To add information that contrasts with what you've been talking about, use でも **demo** instead of それに **soreni**. (See Chapter 5 for more about でも **demo**.)

EXERCISE

7-12

*The following was written by Alison, who is taking Chinese and Japanese at her college.
Read it and answer the questions that follow.*

私は今大学で中国語のクラスと日本語のクラスをとっています。中国語のクラスは宿題が多いです。読み書きがとても難しいです。それに先生が厳しいです。でも試験が簡単です。日本語のクラスも宿題が多いです。漢字の小テストも多いです。でも先生が優しいです。それに試験が簡単です。

Watashi wa ima daigaku de Chūgokugo no kurasu to Nihongo no kurasu o totte imasu. Chūgokugo no kurasu wa shukudai ga ōi desu. Yomikaki ga totemo muzukashii desu. Soreni sensei ga kibishii desu. Demo, shiken ga kantan desu. Nihongo no kurasu mo shukudai ga ōi desu. Kanji no shōtesuto mo ōi desu. Demo sensei ga yasashii desu. Soreni shiken ga kantan desu.

1. Is there a lot of homework in Alison's Japanese class? _____
2. Are the exams in her Chinese class difficult? _____
3. Which course has a strict instructor? _____

EXERCISE

7-13

Complete the following sentences creatively, based on your own experience of studying Japanese.

日本語は _____ が難しいです。でも _____ が簡単です。

Nihongo wa _____ ga muzukashii desu. Demo _____ ga kantan desu.

Deciding on a travel destination

When deciding on where to travel, you will probably want to think about what you can see, what you can do, and what the weather is likely to be. Here you'll learn words and phrases that will help you talk about these things.

Sightseeing attractions

Here are some terms you might use to talk about the sightseeing options at a travel destination:

<i>art museum</i>	美術館	bijutsukan
<i>forest</i>	森	mori
<i>hot spring</i>	温泉	onsen
<i>lake</i>	湖	mizuumi
<i>monument</i>	記念碑	kinenhi
<i>mountain</i>	山	yama
<i>ocean</i>	海	umi
<i>shrine</i>	神社	jinja
<i>ski area</i>	スキー場	sukijō
<i>temple</i>	寺	tera
<i>theater</i>	劇場	gekijō

Description of places

Here are some terms you might use to describe a travel destination:

<i>crowded and lively</i>	にぎやかな	nigiyaka na
<i>famous for ...</i>	で有名な ...	de yūmei na
<i>has a lot of ...</i>	が多い ...	ga ōi ...
<i>has a pretty ...</i>	がきれいな ...	ga kirei na ...
<i>has cheap ...</i>	が安い ...	ga yasui ...
<i>has delicious ...</i>	がおいしい ...	ga oishii ...

Seasons and climates

Here are some terms you might use to talk about the seasons and climate at a travel destination:

<i>cold</i>	寒い	samui
<i>cool</i>	涼しい	suzushii
<i>fall</i>	秋	aki
<i>hot</i>	暑い	atsui
<i>spring</i>	春	haru
<i>summer</i>	夏	natsu
<i>warm</i>	暖かい	atatakai
<i>winter</i>	冬	fuyu

Listing examples with や ya

You can list some items as examples by using the particle や *ya*. Like と *to*, や *ya* can be used only with nouns. For example:

寺や神社があります。

Tera ya jinja ga arimasu.

There are things like temples and shrines.

シュノーケリングや水上スキーができます。

Shunōkeringu ya suijō-sukī ga dekimasu.

You can do snorkeling, water skiing, etc.

Places you may visit in Japan

Here are the names of some travel destinations in Japan:

Akihabara

Kyoto

Nara

Okinawa

Sapporo

秋葉原

京都

奈良

沖縄

札幌

Akihabara

Kyōto

Nara

Okinawa

Sapporo

EXERCISE

7-14

Read the following passage and answer the questions that follow.

北海道は食べ物がおいしいです。温泉があります。それにスキーもできます。夏は涼しいです。冬は寒いです。でも冬は札幌で有名な雪祭りが見られます。沖縄は海がきれいです。いつも暑いからです、いつも泳げます。京都は古い寺や神社がたくさんあります。東京と大阪は人が多いです。

Hokkaidō wa tabemono ga oishii desu. Onsen ga arimasu. Soreni sukī mo dekimasu. Natsu wa suzushii desu. Fuyu wa samui desu. Demo fuyu wa Sapporo de yūmei na yukimatsuri ga miraremasu. Okinawa wa umi ga kirei desu. Itsumo atsui desu. Desukara, itsumo oyogemasu. Kyōto wa furui tera ya jinja ga takusan arimasu. Tōkyō to Ōsaka wa hito ga ōi desu.

(食べ物 **tabemono** means *food*; 雪祭 **yuki matsuri** means *Snow Festival*)

1. What kind of place is Hokkaido?

2. Is it hot in Okinawa?

3. What sightseeing attractions will you find in Kyoto?

EXERCISE

7-15

Describe the places you have visited in the past.

Describing a meal at a restaurant

When talking about your experience of dining at a restaurant, you describe it with adjectives in the past tense. Here you'll learn how to form them, along with some terms that help you describe different cuisines and tastes.

Adjectives in the past tense

See how adjectives pattern in a past neutral-polite context in the following table:

	I Adjectives (e.g., 高い takai <i>expensive</i>)	Na Adjectives (e.g., 高価な kōka na <i>expensive</i>)
Affirmative	Stem + かったです Stem + katta desu 高かったです takakatta desu <i>was expensive</i>	Stem + でした Stem + deshita 高価でした kōka deshita <i>was expensive</i>
Negative	Stem + ありませんでした Stem + ku arimasendeshita <i>or</i> Stem + なかったです Stem + ku nakatta desu 高くありませんでした takaku arimasendeshita 高くなかったです takaku nakatta desu <i>was not expensive</i>	Stem + じゃありませんでした Stem + ja arimasendeshita <i>or</i> Stem + じゃなかったです Stem + ja nakatta desu 高価じゃありませんでした kōka ja arimasendeshita 高価じゃなかったです kōka ja nakatta desu <i>was not expensive</i>

Words for ethnic cuisine

Here are some terms you might use to talk about ethnic cuisine:

Chinese cuisine

French cuisine

Indian cuisine

Italian cuisine

Japanese cuisine

Korean cuisine

Spanish cuisine

Thai cuisine

中華料理

フランス料理

インド料理

イタリア料理

日本料理

韓国料理

スペイン料理

タイ料理

Chūka-ryōri

Furansu-ryōri

Indo-ryōri

Itaria-ryōri

Nihon-ryōri

Kankoku-ryōri

Supein-ryōri

Tai-ryōri

Words for tastes

Here are some terms you might use to talk about tastes:

delicious

bad taste

salty

sour

sweet

bitter

spicy

nice aroma

おいしい

まずい

塩辛い

すっぱい

甘い

苦い

辛い

香りがいい

oishii

mazui

shiokarai

suppai

amai

nigai

karai

kaori ga ii

EXERCISE

7-16

Rewrite the following phrases in the past tense.

1. おいしいです **oishii desu** *is delicious* _____
2. まずいです **mazui desu** *is bad taste* _____
3. 甘いです **amai desu** *is sweet* _____
4. 塩辛いです **shiokarai desu** *is salty* _____
5. 香りがいいです **kaori ga ii desu** *has nice aroma* _____

EXERCISE

7-17

Rewrite the following phrases in the past tense.

1. おいしくありません **oishiku arimasen** _____
2. まずくありません **mazuku arimasen** _____
3. すっぱくありません **suppaku arimasen** _____
4. 苦くありません **nigaku arimasen** _____
5. 辛くありません **karaku arimasen** _____

EXERCISE

7-18

In the following dialog, Yukiko is telling Takeshi about her experience of dining at an Italian restaurant. Fill in the blanks in this dialog appropriately. Refer to Chapter 8 on ... んです **n desu** (It is the case that ...).

YUKIKO 昨日、駅の近くの新しいイタリア料理のレストランに行ったんです。

Kinō, eki no chikaku no atarashii Itaria-ryōri no resutoran ni itta n desu.

TAKESHI ああ、そうですか。どうでしたか。

Ā, sō desu ka. Dō deshita ka.

YUKIKO まあまあおいし1. _____。

Māmā oishi 1. _____.

TAKESHI ああ、そうですか。高かったですか。

Ā, sō desu ka. Takakatta desu ka.

YUKIKO いいえ、あまり2. _____。

Īe, amari 2. _____.

TAKESHI サービスは？

Sābisu wa?

YUKIKO サービスもまあまあ 3. _____。

Sābisu mo māmā 3. _____.

Preferences and skills

Here you will learn to express your preferences and your skills. You will learn how to indicate what you like and dislike and what you like or dislike doing. You'll learn what words to use to express preferences and to talk about a person's skills.

Indicating what you like and dislike with が ga

Unlike in English, in Japanese, preferences are usually expressed by adjectives although their English translations have a verb like *to like* and *to hate*. So, the item being liked or hated has to be marked by the particle が **ga** rather than を **o** because を **o** can be used only to mark the direct object noun of a verb. For example, if you like dogs, say:

私は犬が好きです。

Watashi wa inu ga suki desu.

I like dogs.

Words for preferences

The following words and phrases help you express preferences:

to hate

to hate a lot

to like

to like a lot

嫌いです (嫌いな)

大嫌いです (大嫌いな)

好きです (好きな)

大好きです (大好きな)

kirai desu (kirai na)

daikirai desu (daikirai na)

suki desu (suki na)

daisuki desu (daisuki na)

Nominalizing a verb with の no

To say that you like or dislike “doing” something, use the verb in the dictionary form and add の **no**. This makes the verb like a noun, and such a nominalized verb, or the sequence of the verb and の **no**, can be then marked by the particle が **ga** in a sentence that describes what one likes or dislikes. (こと **koto** may be used instead of の **no**, but の **no** is preferred for mentioning one's likes and dislikes.) For example:

私は食べるのが好きです。

Watashi wa taberu no ga suki desu.

I like eating.

Words for skills

To talk about a person's skills, use the following words and phrases:

to be good at

to be good at and like . . .

to be good at . . .

to be bad at . . .

to be bad at or hate . . .

上手です (上手な)

得意です (得意な)

うまいです (うまい)

下手です (下手な)

苦手です (苦手な)

jōzu desu (jōzu na)

tokui desu (tokui na)

umai desu (umai)

heta desu (heta na)

nigate desu (nigate na)

As with likes and dislikes, you can use が **ga** to mark the noun or to mark the nominalized verb with the particle の **no**. When expressing skills, it is better to use 得意です **tokui desu** than 上手です **jōzu desu** or うまいです **umai desu**. They all mean *to be good at*, but 得意です **tokui desu** is more subjective and has more emphasis on fondness than the other two. Accordingly, it helps you avoid sounding arrogant. For example:

私はテニスが得意です。

Watashi wa tennis ga tokui desu.

I'm good at tennis.

私は車を修理するのが得意です。

Watashi wa kuruma o shūri suru no ga tokui desu.

I'm good at repairing a car.

EXERCISE

7-19

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 私は野菜が嫌いです。でも姉は野菜が大好きです。

Watashi wa yasai ga kirai desu. Demo ane wa yasai ga daisuki desu.

2. 山田さんはピアノを弾くのが上手です。

Yamada-san wa piano o hiku no ga jōzu desu.

3. 兄は人と話すのが下手です。

Ani wa hito to hanasu no ga heta desu.

4. 姉はテニスが得意です。毎朝友達とテニスをしています。

Ane wa tennis ga tokui desu. Maiasa tomodachi to tennis o shite imasu.

EXERCISE

7-20

State what you like and dislike, as well as what you are good at and what you are not good at, in Japanese.

Saying what you want

There are a couple ways to express desire in Japanese: using ほしい **hoshii** and . . . たい **tai**.

Expressing desire with ほしい **hoshii**

To say what you want, use the adjective ほしい **hoshii** (*to want*) and mark the item with the particle が **ga**.

私は新しい車がほしいです。

Watashi wa atarashii kuruma ga hoshii desu.

I want a new car.

Expressing desire with . . . たい **tai**

To say what you want to do, create a complex adjective by adding たい **tai** (*to want to do . . .*) after the stem form (i.e., pre-**masu** form) of the verb. For example, the stem form of 飲む **nomu** (*drink*) is 飲み **nomi**, so by adding たい **tai**, you get 飲みたい **nomi-tai** (*want to drink*). The item is now marked by the particle that the original verb would assign, but if it is を **o**, it may be changed to が **ga**. The difference is very subtle. For example:

ビールを飲みたいです。

Bīru o nomi-tai desu.

I want to drink beer. (What I want to do is to drink beer.)

ビールが飲みたいです。

Bīru ga nomi-tai desu.

I want to drink beer. (What I want to drink is beer.)

Other particles stay the same. For example:

日本に行きたいです。

Nihon ni iki-tai desu.

I want to go to Japan.

EXERCISE

7-21

Read the following passage written by Minoru and answer the questions that follow.

僕は車がほしいです。今は車がありません。ですからいつも友達の手で大学に行っています。とても不便です。それから新しいスマートフォンがほしいです。今のは使いにくいです。でもお金がありません。今マクドナルドでバイトをしています。

Boku wa kuruma ga hoshii desu. Ima wa kuruma ga arimasen. Desukara itsumo tomodachi no kuruma de daigaku ni itte imasu. Totemo fuben desu. Sorekara atarashii sumātohon ga hoshii desu. Ima no wa tsukai-nikui desu. Demo o-kane ga arimasen. Ima Makudonarudo de baito o shite imasu.

(バイトをする **baito o suru** means *to work part-time*)

1. What are the two things Minoru wants to get now?

2. How does he commute to his college?

3. Where does he work part time now?

Clothing

When you go shopping for clothing, you describe it by using adjectives for attributes such as color and size. Here you'll learn such adjectives, as well as words for clothing and accessories, verbs for wearing, and how to talk about trying on clothes.

Words for colors

Colors in Japanese have different forms depending on whether they are used as nouns or modifiers. The following table shows these forms:

	USED AS A NOUN		USED AS A PRENOMINAL MODIFIER	
<i>black</i>	黒	kuro	黒い/黒の	kuroi/kuro no
<i>blue</i>	青	ao	青い/青の	aoi/ao no
<i>brown</i>	茶色	chairo	茶色い/茶色の	chairoi/chairo no
<i>green</i>	緑	midori	緑の	midori no
<i>grey</i>	灰色	haiiro	灰色の	haiiro no
<i>orange</i>	オレンジ	orenji	オレンジの	orenji no
<i>pink</i>	ピンク	pinku	ピンクの	pinku no
<i>purple</i>	紫	murasaki	紫の	murasaki no
<i>red</i>	赤	aka	赤い/赤の	akai/aka no
<i>white</i>	白	shiro	白い/白の	shiroi/shiro no
<i>yellow</i>	黄色	kiiro	黄色い/黄色の	kiiroi/kiiro no

Words for sizes

The following list gives some words for clothing size:

<i>big</i>	大きい	ōkii
<i>small</i>	小さい	chīsai
<i>long</i>	長い	nagai
<i>short</i>	短い	mijikai
<i>size small</i>	Sサイズ	esu saizu
<i>size medium</i>	Mサイズ	emu saizu
<i>size large</i>	Lサイズ	eru saizu

Descriptions of clothing

The following are some words that will help you describe clothing:

<i>adult-like</i>	大人っぽい	otonappoi
<i>childish</i>	子どもっぽい	kodomoppoi
<i>conservative</i>	地味な	jimi na
<i>cool-looking</i>	かっこいい	kakko ii
<i>cute</i>	かわいい	kawaii
<i>elegant</i>	エレガントな	ereganto na

flashy
lovely, refined
refined, nice taste

派手な
素敵
上品な

hade na
suteki na
jōhin na

Showing excessiveness with . . . すぎる sugiru

To say *too*, as in *too small* or *too big*, add すぎる **sugiru** after the adjective in the stem form. For example:

このシャツは大きすぎます。
Kono shatsu wa ōki-sugimasu.
This shirt is too big.

You can also use すぎる **sugiru** for excessive actions, such as *ate too much*. Use a verb in the stem form in this case. For example:

洋服を買いすぎました。
Yōfuku o kai-sugimashita.
I bought too many clothes.

Words for clothing and accessories

The following are some words that refer to clothing and accessories:

belt	ベルト	beruto
bottoms in general	ズボン	zubon
caps and hats in general	帽子	bōshi
coat	コート	kōto
dress	ドレス	doresu
jacket	ジャケット	jaketto
jeans	ジーパン	jīpan
necktie	ネクタイ	nekutai
shirt	シャツ	shatsu
shoes	靴	kutsu
skirt	スカート	sukāto
sneakers	スニーカー	sunīkā
socks	靴下	kutsushita
suit	スーツ	sūtsu
sunglasses	サングラス	sangurasu
sweater	セーター	sētā

The term ズボン **zubon** is not a fashionable term in modern Japanese, but it is still used as a generic term that refers to all sorts of bottoms, including the bottoms of pajamas and sweat suits. Alternatives include スラックス **surakkusu** (*slacks*), トラウザーズ **torauzāzu** (*trousers*), and パンツ **pantsu** (*pants*).

Verbs for wearing

The Japanese use different verbs to mean *to put on* or *to wear*. For items below the waist, such as pants, skirts, socks, and shoes, use 履く **haku**. For items for your head, such as caps and hats, use かぶる **kaburu**. For accessories such as necklaces, eyeglasses, earrings, watches, and belts, use する **suru**. For eyeglasses, かける **kakeru** is also possible. For other clothing items, such as jackets, dresses, kimonos, and shirts, use 着る **kiru**. Use all these verbs in the . . . ている **te iru** construction once the item is worn. (See Chapter 5 for the . . . ている **te iru** construction.) For example:

あの人は素敵なコートを着ていますね。
Ano hito wa suteki na kōto o kite imasu ne.
That person is wearing a nice coat, isn't he?

Trying on clothing: . . . みる **miru**

To express doing something as a trial, you use the verb in the te form and add the auxiliary verb みる **miru** (*to see*). For example:

着てみます
kite mimasu
to try putting on some clothes

Polite shop language: ございます **gozaimasu**

At stores, sales representatives use very polite business-like language. For example, they say ございます **gozaimasu** as opposed to あります **arimasu** to mean *We have*. For example:

Mサイズは黒がございます。
Emu-saizu wa kuro ga gozaimasu.
We have one black (item) in medium.

EXERCISE

7-22

Write your favorite colors and the favorite colors of your family members.

EXAMPLE

私は赤が好きです。 **Watashi wa aka ga suki desu.** *I like red.*

EXERCISE

7-23

In each of the following, choose the appropriate answer from the options in parentheses.

1. ジャケットを(着て, はいて, かぶって, して)います。

Jaketto o (kite, haite, kabutte, shite) imasu.

(She) is wearing a jacket.

2. スニーカーを(着て, はいて, かぶって, して)います。

Sunikā o (kite, haite, kabutte, shite) imasu.

(She) is wearing sneakers.

3. 帽子を(着て, はいて, かぶって, して)います。

Bōshi o (kite, haite, kabutte, shite) imasu.

(She) is wearing a hat.

4. ネックレスを(着て, はいて, かぶって, して)います。

Nekkuresu o (kite, haite, kabutte, shite) imasu.

(She) is wearing a necklace.

EXERCISE

7-24

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. *This coat is too long.*

2. *This dress is too conservative.*

3. *This necklace is too expensive.*

EXERCISE

7-25

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. *I like black and red.*

2. *I tried this dress.*

3. *Please try this skirt.*

4. *I bought too many sweaters.*

Read the following dialog between Mary and a sales representative at a store and translate the underlined parts.

MARY

すみません。このジャケットの黒はありますか。

Sumimasen. Kono jaketto no kuro wa arimasu ka.

SALES

REPRESENTATIVE

1. あのう、黒はございません。緑がございます。

1. **Anō, kuro wa gozaimasen. Midori wa gozaimasu.**

MARY

緑ですか。

Midori desu ka.

SALES

REPRESENTATIVE

赤もございますよ。

Aka mo gozaimasu yo.

MARY

赤？

Aka?

SALES

REPRESENTATIVE

赤はかわいいですよ。2. 着てみてください。

Aka wa kawaii desu yo. 2. Kite mite kudasai.

MARY

3. でも、これはちょっと小さすぎます。L サイズはありますか。

3. **Demo, kore wa chotto chīsa-sugimasu. Eru-saizu wa arimasu ka.**

Adverbs

Whereas adjectives describe things and people (nouns), adverbs describe manners of actions (verbs). For example, ゆっくり **yukkuri** (*slowly*) is an adverb. There are many adverbs that were derived from adjectives.

Adverbs derived from adjectives

In English you can turn an adjective into an adverb by adding *-ly*. Similarly, in Japanese, you can create adverbs from adjectives by adding に **ni** to the stem of a **na** adjective as in 静かに **shizuka ni** (*quietly*), or by adding く **ku** to the stem of an **i** adjective as in 早く **hayaku** (*quickly*). The adverb version of いい **ii** is よく **yoku**.

The adverb + する suru

If you use する **suru** (*do*) after an adverb, it means to change something or someone in a certain way. For example, 部屋をきれいにする **heya o kirei ni suru** means *to make the room clean* and 静かにする **shizuka ni suru** means *to make oneself quiet*. It is often used with もう少し **mō sukoshi** (*a little bit*) to ask someone to make some change.

EXERCISE

7-27

Convert the following adjectives into adverbs.

1. 上手な **jōzu na** (*skillful*) _____
2. 静かな **shizuka na** (*quiet*) _____
3. 早い **hayai** (*early*) _____
4. まじめな **majima na** (*serious*) _____
5. いい **ii** (*good*) _____

EXERCISE

7-28

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. ちょっとうるさいですよ。もう少し静かに勉強してください。

Chotto urusai desu yo. Mō sukoshi shizuka ni benkyō shite kudasai.

2. 読めません。きれいに書いてください。それからもう少し大きく書いてください。

Yomemasen. Kirei ni kaite kudasai. Sorekara mō sukoshi ōkiku kaite kudasai.

3. クラスは 9 時からです。もう少し早く来てください。

Kurasu wa ku-ji kara desu. Mō sukoshi hayaku kite kudasai.

4. よく考えました。でもこの仕事はしないつもりです。

Yoku kangaemashita. Demo kono shigoto wa shinai tsumori desu.

(考える **kangaeru** means *to think about*)

5. もう少しまじめにしてください。

Mō sukoshi majime ni shite kudasai.

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. Could you be quiet, please?

2. Could you make the room clean?

3. Could you come here early tomorrow?

4. Please read it carefully.

Comparisons

In Japanese as in English, a number of comparisons are possible. Here you'll learn to compare two items to each other and to compare multiple items in the same group or category.

Comparing two items to each other

To say *A is more . . . than B*, just add *B より B yori (than B)* in the statement sentence that says *A is . . .*. For example:

犬はかわいいです。

Inu wa kawaii desu.

Dogs are cute.

犬は猫よりかわいいです。

Inu wa neko yori kawaii desu.

Dogs are cuter than cats.

To ask a question that involves comparing two items, such as *Which is more . . . , X or Y?* place *XとYと X to Y to*, at the beginning of the sentence and use *どちらの方 dochira no hō (which one)* to create a question sentence. For example:

犬と猫と、どちらの方がかわいいですか。

Inu to neko to, dochira no hō ga kawaii desu ka.

Which are cuter, dogs or cats?

Equivalent-degree comparisons

To show equivalence, use *. . . と 同じぐらい . . . to onaji gurai (as . . . as . . .)*. For example, *犬はねこと同じぐらいかわいいです Inu wa neko to onaji gurai kawaii desu* means *Dogs are as cute as cats*. By contrast, to express non-equivalence, use the particle *ほど hodo ((not as . . .) as)* along with a negative adjective or verb. For example:

犬は猫ほどかわいくありません。

Inu wa neko hodo kawaiku arimasen,

Dogs are not as cute as cats.

Superlative comparisons

To express the superlative comparison, use the adverb 一番 **ichiban**, which literally means *the first, the best, or the most*. For example:

母が一番優しいです。
Haha ga ichiban yasashii desu.
My mom is the kindest.

If the basis of superlative comparison is a list of items, list them, as in XとYとZの中で **X to Y to Z no naka de** or XとYとZとで **X to Y to Z to de**. For a class of items, add の中で **no naka de** after the name of the class. For example:

猫と犬と兎の中で猫が一番好きです。
Neko to inu to usagi no naka de neko ga ichiban suki desu.
Among cats, dogs, and rabbits, I like cats the best.

動物の中で猫が一番好きです。
Dōbutsu no naka de neko ga ichiban suki desu.
Among animals, I like cats the best.

For superlative questions, never use どちら **dochira** (*which one*) because it is only used for comparing two items. Instead, use regular question words such as だれ **dare** (*who*), どこ **doko** (*where*), いつ **itsu** (*when*), and 何 **nani** (*what*). But note that 何 **nani** is replaced with どれ **dore** (*which one*) if the question is based on a list of items rather than a class of items. For example:

果物の中で何が一番好きですか。
Kudamono no naka de nani ga ichiban suki desu ka.
Among fruit, what do you like the best?

桃と苺とりんごの中でどれが一番好きですか。
Momo to ichigo to ringo no naka de dore ga ichiban suki desu ka.
Among peaches, strawberries, and apples, which do you like the best?

Words for classes of items

These are some words that will help you describe classes of items:

<i>animals</i>	動物	dōbutsu
<i>beverages</i>	飲み物	nomimono
<i>buildings</i>	建物	tatemono
<i>colors</i>	色	iro
<i>flowers</i>	花	hana
<i>foods</i>	食べ物	tabemono
<i>fruits</i>	果物	kudamono
<i>meats</i>	肉	niku
<i>pets</i>	ペット	petto
<i>sports</i>	スポーツ	supōtsu
<i>subjects (academic)</i>	教科	kyōka
<i>vegetables</i>	やさい	yasai

EXERCISE

7-30

Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate word or phrase.

1. 犬と猫と、_____が好きですか。

Inu to neko to, _____ ga suki desu ka.

Which do you like better, dogs or cats?

2. クラスの中で _____ が一番よく勉強しますか。

Kurasu no naka de _____ ga ichiban yoku benkyō shimasu ka.

Who studies the most in class?

3. 動物の中で _____ が一番好きですか。

Dōbutsu no naka de _____ ga ichiban suki desu ka.

Among animals, what do you like the best?

4. 犬と猫と兎の中で _____ が一番好きですか。

Inu to neko to usagi no naka de _____ ga ichiban suki desu ka.

Which do you like the best among dogs, cats, and rabbits?

5. 犬は猫 _____ かわいいですよ。

Inu wa neko _____ kawaii desu yo.

Dogs are cuter than cats.

6. 犬は猫 _____ かわいくありませんよ。

Inu wa neko _____ kawaiku arimasen yo.

Dogs are not as cute as cats.

7. 犬は猫 _____ かわいいですよ。

Inu wa neko _____ kawaii desu yo.

Dogs are as cute as cats.

EXERCISE

7-31

Answer the following questions in Japanese.

1. 果物の中で何が一番好きですか。

Kudamono no naka de nani ga ichiban suki desu ka.

Among fruits, what do you like the best?

2. スポーツの中で何を一番よくしますか。

Supōtsu no naka de nani o ichiban yoku shimasu ka.

Among sports, what do you play the most?

3. すしとさしみと、どちらの方が好きですか。

Sushi to sashimi to, dochira no hō ga suki desu ka.

Between sushi and sashimi, which one do you like better?

4. 日本料理と中華料理と韓国料理の中でどれが一番好きですか。

Nihon-ryōri to Chūka-ryōri to Kankoku-ryōri no naka de dore ga ichiban suki desu ka.

Among Japanese cuisine, Chinese cuisine, and Korean cuisine, which do you like the best?

EXERCISE

7-32

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. *My father is not as kind as my mother.*
-

2. *Which is easier, Chinese or Japanese?*
-

3. *Which is safer: cars or planes?*

(安全な **anzen na** means *safe*)

4. *Katakana is as easy as hiragana.*
-

5. *I'm taller than my father.*
-

Making connections

•8•

In this chapter, you will learn how to make connections by relating facts and your thoughts in order to communicate coherently and effectively. You'll learn to make connections in a number of ways, such as stating what you think, sharing experiences, and using conjunctions.

Stating what you think with 思います **omoimasu**

Here you will learn how to use the quotation particle と **to** to express what you think. You will also learn how to create ta forms of verbs and adjectives, which you need to use to express past events in this construction.

The quotation particle と **to**

At the end of a statement, you can add *that's what I think* by using the verb 思う **omou** (*think*) along with the particle と **to**. と **to** marks what is being quoted and can be used when the main verb is 聞きました **kikimashita** (*I heard*) or 言いました **iimashita** (*I said*) or 思います **omoimasu** (*I think*). For example:

兄は数学は簡単だと言いました。

Ani wa sūgaku wa kantan da to iimashita.

My older brother said that math is easy.

私はジョージさんはイギリスに帰ったと聞きました。

Watashi wa Jōji-san wa Igirisu ni kaetta to kikimashita.

I heard that George returned to England.

私はこの本は安いと思います。

Watashi wa kono hon wa yasui to omoimasu.

I think this book is cheap.

For stating a third person's thinking, use 思っています **omotte imasu** instead of 思います **omoimasu**. For example:

父は私は頭がよくないと思っています。

Chichi wa watashi wa atama ga yokunai to omotte imasu.

My father thinks that I am not smart.

Plain forms in the non-past tense

Before the quotation particle と **to**, the verbs and adjectives need to be in the plain form unless they are a part of a direct quote. The plain past affirmative forms are also called **ta forms** because they all end in た **ta** (or sometimes だ **da**). The **ta** form of a verb is very easy to make if you already know a **te** form: Just change the vowel **e** at the end of the **te** form to **a**. For example, the **te** form of 食べる **taberu** (*eat*) is 食べて **tabete**, and its **ta** form is 食べた **tabeta**. Similarly, the **te** form of 飲む **nomu** (*drink*) is 飲んで **nonde**, and its **ta** form is 飲んだ **nonda**. (See Chapter 5 for how to make the **te** form.)

The plain forms of verbs and adjectives, both non-past and past, both affirmative and negative, are summarized in the following table. To create a form, check the category or class of the item and follow the pattern of one of the items in this table:

	NON-PAST		PAST	
	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
Verbs	食べる taberu <i>will eat, eat, eats</i>	食べない tabenai <i>won't eat, doesn't/don't eat</i>	食べた tabeta <i>ate</i>	食べなかった tabenakatta <i>didn't eat</i>
Noun + Copula	犬だ inu da <i>is a dog</i>	犬じゃない inu ja nai <i>isn't a dog</i>	犬だった inu datta <i>was a dog</i>	犬じゃなかった inu ja nakatta <i>wasn't a dog</i>
Na adjective	高価だ kōka da <i>is expensive</i>	高価じゃない kōka ja nai <i>isn't expensive</i>	高価だった kōka datta <i>was expensive</i>	高価じゃなかった kōka ja nakatta <i>wasn't expensive</i>
I adjective	高い takai <i>is expensive</i>	高くない takaku nai <i>isn't expensive</i>	高かった takakatta <i>was expensive</i>	高くなかった takaku nakatta <i>wasn't expensive</i>

EXERCISE

8.1

Convert the following verbs and adjectives in the polite form into the plain form.

- 行きます **ikimasu** *will go* _____
- 飲みました **nomimashita** *drank* _____
- 食べませんでした **tabemasendeshita** *didn't eat* _____
- 高かったです **takakatta desu** *was expensive* _____
- きれいでした **kirei deshita** *was pretty* _____
- すしじゃありませんでした **sushi ja arimasendeshita** *wasn't sushi* _____

EXERCISE

8-2

Convert the following verbs and adjectives from the polite form into the plain form. These verbs and adjectives are slightly complex because they include auxiliary verbs or suffixes.

1. 飲んでいました **nonde imashita** was drinking _____
2. 飲めません **nomemasen** is not able to drink _____
3. 読みたいです **yomi-tai desu** want to read _____
4. 食べすぎました **tabe-sugimashita** ate too much _____
5. 着てみます **kite mimasu** will try it on _____

EXERCISE

8-3

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. I think Japanese is easy.

2. I think I cannot write kanji. (I don't think I can write kanji.)

3. I think this sweater is too big.

4. I think the food at that restaurant was delicious.

5. My mother thinks this dress is too expensive.

Using a relative clause

More than just adjectives can modify nouns in Japanese. You can use a noun to modify a noun with the help of the particle の **no**. You can use a verb to modify a noun if it is in the plain form and placed before the noun. You can even modify a noun by using a sentence that ends in a verb in the plain form.

For example, in the following sentence, the noun 映画 **eiga** (movie) is modified by a sentence marked by a pair of brackets, which means *I watched (the movie) yesterday* in the plain form:

[昨日私が見た]映画は面白かったです。

[Kinō watashi ga mita] **eiga wa omoshirokatta desu.**

The movie I watched yesterday was interesting.

This sentence, marked by a pair of brackets, does not actually say *the movie*. When you use a sentence with a gap like this before a noun with which the gap should be filled, we call it a *relative clause*. So, it's very useful to know plain forms even if you are speaking in a polite context.

EXERCISE

8.4

Reorder the items in each of the following sets to form a grammatical sentence.

1. 男の人は **otoko no hito wa** *the man* (topic marker), 来た **kita** *came*, 日本人でした **Nihonjin deshita** *was Japanese*, 昨日 **kinō** *yesterday*

2. おいしかったです **oishikatta desu** *was delicious*, 母が **haha ga** *my mother* (subject marker), てんぷら **tempura** *tempura*, 作った **tsukutta** *made*, は **wa** (topic marker)

3. 田中さん **Tanaka-san** *Mr. Tanaka*, 昨日 **kinō** *yesterday*, 洋服を **yōfuku o** *clothing* (direct object marker), 今日も **kyō mo** *today also*, は **wa** (topic marker), 着ていた **kite ita** (*was wearing*), 着ています **kite imasu** (*am wearing*)

EXERCISE

8.5

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. The person who is drinking coffee over there is my friend.

2. The car I bought last year is not good.

3. That dog is the dog I saw in the park last week.

Using . . . なんです **n desu** for making connections in conversation

What you say in conversation is usually related to what was said or what you would like the other person to respond to. Otherwise, your speech will be disconnected from the context and your conversation partner will not fully understand why you are saying things you are saying. It is as if there is a hidden string that connects all utterances made by you and your conversation partner. To make such a tie stronger, the Japanese often end their sentences with なんです . . . **n desu** in conversation. It may be to show that a statement is a part of the explanation to the previous utterance, implying *That's why*, or it may be to elicit the conversation partner's response, implying *What do you think? Any comment?*

So, なんです **n desu** is a discourse tool for Japanese. It is actually the reduced form of のです **no desu**. It cannot be translated into English. It follows verbs and adjectives in the plain form except that the non-past affirmative copular verb だ **da** must be realized as な **na**. For example, to mean that you hate composition, if you say 私は作文が嫌いなんです **Watashi wa sakubun ga kirai na n desu** instead of 私は作文が嫌いです **Watashi wa sakubun ga kirai desu**, you can avoid sounding like a robot or sounding very blunt and harsh, and your conversation partner will naturally feel like responding to you with his/her comments and thoughts. Similarly, consider a scenario where your friend just saw you carrying a suitcase and appeared to be puzzled about it. Even before she asks you, you can say ハワイに行くんです **Hawai ni iku n desu** (*I'm going to Hawaii*). Then your friend will know that you are trying to explain rather than abruptly making a statement. Therefore, there is no need to use なんです **n desu** when you are writing or when you are giving a speech in front of an audience. It is a conversation tool that help conversation participants make connections.

EXERCISE

8-6

Rephrase the following sentences using なんです **n desu**.

1. 来月結婚します。

Raigetsu kekkon shimasu.

I'll get married next month.

2. お金がありません。

O-kane ga arimasen.

I don't have money.

3. 会社を辞めました。

Kaisha o yamemashita.

I quit the company.

4. 私の父は韓国人です。

Watashi no chichi wa kankoku-jin desu.

My father is a Korean.

Asking “why?”

Next you will learn how to ask for a reason and how to state a reason. You’ll also learn how to talk about possible reasons for studying Japanese.

Asking for a reason with どうして **dōshite**

To ask for a reason, say どうして **dōshite**, state the fact for which you are asking for the reason (in the plain form), and add んですか **n desu ka** at the end. Because you are using んです **n desu**, discussed in the previous section, make sure to change the non-past affirmative copula だ **da** to な **na**. For example:

どうして田中さんが嫌いなんですか。

Dōshite Tanaka-san ga kirai na n desu ka.

Why do you hate Mr. Tanaka?

なんで **nande** also means *why*, but it is slightly informal and can also mean *by what* and so it can be ambiguous. なぜ **naze** also means *why*, but it is most appropriate for written form.

Stating a reason with からです **kara desu**

To answer a question with どうして **dōshite** (*why*), you can state the reason in the plain form and add からです **kara desu** at the end. For example:

A: どうして田中さんが嫌いなんですか。

Dōshite Tanaka-san ga kirai na n desu ka.

Why do you hate Mr. Tanaka?

B: 田中さんはうそつきだからです。

Tanaka-san wa usotsuki da kara desu.

Because Mr. Tanaka is a liar.

Possible reasons for studying Japanese

If you are studying Japanese, you will often be asked why you are doing so. The following are common reasons for studying Japanese:

*I am interested in business.
I have a Japanese friend.*

ビジネスに興味がある。
日本人の友達がいる。

**Bizinesu ni kyōmi ga aru.
Nihon-jin no tomodachi
ga iru.**

*I like anime and manga.
I like Japanese culture.
I like karate and kendo.
I want to teach English in
Japan.*

アニメとマンガが好きだ。
日本の文化が好きだ。
空手と剣道が好きだ。
日本で英語を教えたい。

**Anime to manga ga sukida.
Nihon no bunka ga sukida.
Karate to kendō ga sukida.
Nihon de eigo o oshie-tai.**

*I want to work in Japan.
Japanese language is very
different from English.*

日本で働きたい。
日本語は英語とぜん
ぜん違う。

**Nihon de hataraki-tai.
Nihongo wa eigo to zenzen
chigau.**

Following the example, create a question that asks the reason for each statement.

EXAMPLE

ボストンに行きます。

Bosuton ni ikimasu.

I will go to Boston.

どうしてボストンに行くんですか。 Dōshite Bosuton ni iku n desu ka. Why did you go to Boston?

1. ホテルをキャンセルしました。

Hoteru o kyanseru shimashita.

I cancelled the hotel (reservation).

2. 会議に出ません。

Kaigi ni demasen.

I will not attend the conference.

3. 山田さんの車を買いませんでした。

Yamada-san no kuruma o kaimasendeshita.

I did not buy Ms. Yamada's car.

4. 韓国語を勉強しています。

Kankokugo o benkyō shite imasu.

I'm studying Korean.

Following the example, create a sentence that causes the statement given to serve as a reason.

EXAMPLE

ボストンに行きます。

Bosuton ni ikimasu.

I will go to Boston.

ボストンに行くからです。 **Bosuton ni iku kara desu.** It is because I will go to Boston.

1. 漢字が難しいです。

Kanji ga muzukashii desu.

Kanji are hard.

2. お金がありません。

O-kane ga arimasen.

I don't have money.

3. とても高かったです。

Totemo takakatta desu.

It was very expensive.

4. あまりきれいじゃありませんでした。

Amari kirei ja arimasendeshita.

It was not very pretty.

Answer the following question in Japanese, based on your personal situation.

どうして日本語を勉強しているんですか。

Dōshite Nihongo o benkyō shite iru n desu ka.

Why are you studying Japanese?

Sharing experiences

Here you will learn how to talk about experiences. You'll learn the form you need to use as well as some words and phrases that will help you talk about your experiences.

Expressing experience with **ことがあります koto ga arimasu**

In order to express what experience you have, don't use a simple past sentence, but instead use **ことがあります koto ga arimasu**. **Arimasu** (*to exist, to have*) is in the non-past tense because you *have* the experience now. **こと koto** is an abstract noun that means *thing, occasion, matter*, etc. So, what you are literally saying is *I have the occasion of completing such and such*. Importantly, the verb before **koto** must be in the **ta** form (the plain past tense). For example:

私は納豆を食べたことがあります。でも梅干を食べたことはありません。

Watashi wa nattō o tabeta koto ga arimasu. Demo, umeboshi o tabeta koto wa arimasen.

I have had fermented soybeans. However, I have never had pickled plum.

Experiences you might have

The following are the words for some experiences you might want to talk about:

to skydive

to eat fermented soybeans

to go to Europe

to go to karaoke

to have a fight

to lose a credit card

to see Mt. Fuji

to stay in a traditional

Japanese style-inn

to take a helicopter

to take Shinkansen

(bullet train)

to watch kabuki play

to watch movies directed by

Akira Kurosawa

to wear a kimono

スカイダイビングをする

納豆を食べる

ヨーロッパに行く

カラオケに行く

喧嘩をする

クレジットカードをなくす

富士山を見る

旅館に泊まる

ヘリコプターに乗る

新幹線に乗る

歌舞伎を見る

黒澤明の映画を見る

着物を着る

sukaidaibingu o suru

nattō o taberu

Yōroppa ni iku

karaoke ni iku

kenka o suru

kurejitto kādo o nakusu

Fujisan o miru

ryokan ni tomaru

herikoputā ni noru

Shinkansen ni noru

kabuki o miru

Kurosawa Akira no

eiga o miru

kimono o kiru

The counter 回 **kai** (. . . *times*)

To say *once, twice, three times*, etc., use the counter 回 **kai**. For example:

日本には3回行ったことがあります。

Nihon ni wa san-kai itta koto ga arimasu.

I've been to Japan three times.

The following table shows how to read this counter with numerals:

1回	2回	3回	4回	5回	6回	7回	8回	9回	10回
いっかい	にかい	さんかい	よんかい	ごかい	ろっかい	ななかい	はっかい／はちかい	きゅうかい	じゅうかい／じっかい
ik-kai	ni-kai	san-kai	yon-kai	go-kai	rok-kai	nana-kai	hak-kai／hachi-kai	kyū-kai	juk-kai／jik-kai

EXERCISE

8-10

Translate the following sentences into Japanese.

1. *Have you ever been to Japan?*

2. *Have you ever lost your credit card before?*

3. *Have you ever been in a helicopter?*

4. *Have you watched Hayao Miyazaki's anime?*

EXERCISE

8-11

Answer the questions from Exercise 8-10 in Japanese.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

Read the following dialog between Justin and Mike and translate the underlined parts.

JUSTIN 1. マイクさんは日本に行ったことがありますか。

1. Maiku-san wa Nihon ni itta koto ga arimasu ka.

MIKE はい, ありますよ。3回あります。

Hai, arimasu yo. San-kai arimasu.

JUSTIN カプセルインに泊まったことはありますか。

Kapuseru-in ni tomatta koto wa arimasu ka.

MIKE ありません。でも僕の友達に泊まったことがあります。

Arimasen. Demo boku no tomodachi wa tomatta koto ga arimasu.

JUSTIN ああ, そうですか。

Ā, sō desu ka.

MIKE 2. とても小さかったと言っていました。

2. Totemo chisakatta to itte imashita.

JUSTIN 3. 僕も泊ってみたいと思っているんです。

3. Boku mo tomatte mi-tai to omotte iru n desu.

MIKE ああ, そうですか。

Ā, sō desu ka.

(カプセルイン **kapuseru-in** means *capsule inn*, an inexpensive business hotel with extremely small rooms where one can barely sit up)

Forecasting weather

Next you will learn how to express probability. You will also learn words related to weather and how to talk about weather forecasting.

Expressing probability with でしょう **deshō**

When you think something is probably the case, make a statement in the plain form and add でしょう **deshō** at the end. Remember to drop the non-past affirmative copula だ **da**. For example:

あしたは大雪でしょう。

Ashita wa ōyuki deshō.

It will probably snow a lot tomorrow.

Words for weather

The following words and phrases will help you talk about weather:

<i>clear weather (sky)</i>	晴れ	hare
<i>cloud</i>	雲	kumo
<i>cloudy weather (sky)</i>	曇り	kumori
<i>drizzle</i>	小雨	kosame
<i>heavy rain</i>	大雨	ōame
<i>heavy snow</i>	大雪	ōyuki
<i>rain</i>	雨	ame
<i>snow</i>	雪	yuki
<i>storm</i>	嵐	arashi
<i>strong wind</i>	強風	kyōfū
<i>thunderstorm</i>	雷雨	raiu
<i>to become clear (sky)</i>	晴れる	hareru
<i>to become cloudy</i>	曇る	kumoru
<i>to fall</i>	降る	furu
<i>tornado</i>	竜巻	tatsumaki
<i>typhoon</i>	台風	taifū
<i>wind</i>	風	kaze

EXERCISE

8-13

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. 今日は一日曇りでしょう。

Kyō wa ichinichi kumori deshō.

2. 明日の午後は雨が降るでしょう。

Ashita no gogo wa ame ga furu deshō.

3. 明日の晩は雪が降るでしょう。

Ashita no ban wa yuki ga furu deshō.

4. 週末は晴れるでしょう。

Shūmatsu wa hareru deshō.

Talking about sickness

Here you will learn how to talk about possibilities. You will also learn vocabulary words related to sickness and how to talk about symptoms and diagnoses.

Talking about a possible case with かもしれません **kamoshiremasen**

When you think something is possibly the case, make a statement in the plain form and add **かもしれません kamoshiremasen** (*It is possible that . . .*) at the end. Just remember to drop the non-past affirmative copula **だ da**. For example:

風邪かもしれません。

Kaze kamoshiremasen.

It may be a cold.

熱があるかもしれません。

Netsu ga aru kamoshiremasen.

I may have a fever.

仕事に行けないかもしれません。

Shigoto ni ikenai kamoshiremasen.

I may not be able to go to work.

Symptoms of illness

In case you need to go see a doctor in Japan, learn the following words and phrases:

to cough

咳が出る

seki ga deru

to have a fever

熱がある

netsu ga aru

to have a headache

頭が痛い

atama ga itai

to have a runny nose

鼻水が出る

hanamizu ga deru

to have a sore throat

喉が痛い

nodo ga itai

to have a stomachache

おなかが痛い

onaka ga itai

to have a stuffy nose

鼻がつまっている

hana ga tsumatte iru

to have constipation

便秘をしている

benpi o shite iru

to have diarrhea

下痢をしている

geri o shite iru

to have dizziness

目眩がする

memai ga suru

to have nausea

吐き気がする

hakike ga suru

to have phlegm

痰が出る

tan ga deru

to have the chills

寒気がする

samuke ga suru

to sneeze

くしゃみが出る

kushami ga deru

to wheeze

ゼーゼーする

zē zē suru

Diagnosis of illness

The following are words for common illnesses and injuries:

allergies

アレルギー

arerugī

appendicitis

盲腸

mōchō

arthritis

関節炎

kansetsuen

asthma

喘息

zensoku

broken bone

骨折

kosetsu

bronchitis

気管支炎

kikanshien

cancer

癌

gan

cold

風邪

kaze

food poisoning
influenza/flu
pneumonia
sprain

食中毒
インフルエンザ
肺炎
捻挫

shokuchūdoku
infuruenza
haien
nenza

EXERCISE

8-14

Complete each of the following sentences with the appropriate word.

1. 鼻水が _____ ます。

Hanamizu ga _____ masu.

I have a runny nose.

2. 熱が _____ ます。

Netsu ga _____ masu.

I have a fever.

3. _____ が出ます。

_____ **ga demasu.**

I cough.

4. 頭が _____ です。

Atama ga _____ desu.

I have a headache.

EXERCISE

8-15

Read the following dialog between a patient and a doctor and answer the questions that follow.

DOCTOR どうしましたか。

Dō shimashita ka.

What happened?

PATIENT 咳が出るんです。それに熱があります。

Seki ga deru n desu. Soreni netsu ga arimasu.

DOCTOR ああ、そうですか。

Ā, sō desu ka.

PATIENT それから頭が痛いです。

Sorekara atama ga itai desu.

DOCTOR 喉は。

Nodo wa?

PATIENT 喉は痛くありません。

Nodo wa itaku arimasen.

[The doctor checks the patient.]

DOCTOR 肺炎かもしれません。

Haien kamo shiremasen.

1. Does the patient have a fever? _____
2. Does he have a cough? _____
3. Does he have a sore throat? _____
4. What is the doctor's conclusion? _____

Listing and connecting actions and states by using the **te** form

You can list actions and states in one sentence by using the **te** form. The **te** form does not bear tense, so it cannot complete a sentence, but includes the meaning *and*, so it has to be followed by another instance of a verb or an adjective, which might bear tense. The last verb or adjective in the sentence should not be in the **te** form but should appear in the regular form, bearing a tense. Depending on the context, **te** forms can list temporally ordered actions, additional properties, and cause-effect relationships.

To form a **te** form of an adjective, add **くて kute** to the stem of an **i** adjectives or **で de** to the stem of a **na** adjective. The **te** form of the adjective いい **ii** is **よくて yokute**. To form the negative **te** forms, just replace **くて kute** or **で de** in their affirmative **te** forms with **なくて ku nakute** or **じゃなくて ja nakute**.

Chapter 5 explains how to form a **te** form of a verb. The representative forms of all of the **te** forms are listed in the following table:

	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
Verbs	食べて tabete <i>eat and</i>	食べなくて or 食べないで tabenakute or tabenai de <i>not eat and</i>
Noun + copula	犬で inu de <i>be a dog and</i>	犬じゃなくて inu ja nakute <i>be not a dog and</i>
Na adjective	高価で kōka de <i>be expensive and</i>	高価じゃなくて kōka ja nakute <i>be not expensive and</i>
I adjective	高く takakute <i>be expensive and</i>	高くなくて takaku nakute <i>be not expensive and</i>

Verbs have two kinds of negative **te** forms: . . . なくて **nakute** and . . . ないで **naide**. Use . . . なくて **nakute** only if it creates a cause-effect relationship.

子どもがご飯を食べなくて困っています。

Kodomo ga gohan o tabenakute komatte imasu.

My child does not eat meals and (so) I'm troubled.

朝ごはんを食べないでクラスに行きました。

Asa-gohan o tabenai de kurasu ni ikimashita.

I did not eat breakfast, and then I went to class. (I went to class without eating breakfast.)

EXERCISE

8-16

Connect the words in each set by using the **te** form.

1. 昨日 **kinō** yesterday, テレビを見る **terebi o miru** to watch TV, 宿題をする **shukudai o suru** to do homework, 寝る **neru** to sleep

2. あした **ashita** tomorrow, 掃除をする **sōji o suru** to clean, 買い物をする **kaimono o suru** to go shopping, 料理をする **ryōri o suru** to cook

3. マイクさん **Maiku-san** Mike, 頭がいい **atama ga ii** to be smart, 優しい **yasashii** to be kind, かわいい **kakko ii** to be good-looking

4. メアリーさん **Meari-san** Mary, きれいだ **kirei da** to be pretty, 頭がいい **atama ga ii** to be smart

5. このレストランのすし **kono resutoran no sushi** this restaurant's sushi, 高くない **takaku nai** not to be expensive, おいしい **oishii** to be delicious

EXERCISE

8-17

For each of the following, choose the correct answer from the options in parentheses.

1. あまりきれい(じゃなくて, なくて)よくありません。

Amari kirei (ja nakute, ku nakute) yoku arimasen.

It's not pretty, and it's not good.

2. シャワーを(あびないで, あびなくて)学校に行きました。

Shawā o (abinai de, abinakute) gakkō ni ikimashita.

I went to school without taking a shower.

3. 田中さんが(来ないで, 来なくて)困りました。

Tanaka-san ga (konai de, konakute) komarimashita.

Mr. Tanaka did not come, so I was in trouble.

4. ここでタバコを(すわないで, すわなくて)ください。

Koko de tabako o (suwanai de, suwanakute) kudasai.

Please do not smoke here.

5. 昨日は早く(おきられなくて, おきられないで), クラスに遅れました。

Kinō wa hayaku (okirarenakute, okirarenai de), kurasu ni okuremashita.

I could not wake up early and was late for class.

(... に遅れる **ni okureru** means to be late for ...)

EXERCISE

8-18

Translate the following sentences into Japanese using **te** forms.

1. Please ask me and then buy (it).

(私に聞く **watashi ni kiku** means to ask me)

2. Don't eat without washing your hands.

3. I took medicine because I had a headache.

(薬をのむ **kusuri o nomu** means to take medicine)

The clause conjunctions が **ga** and から **kara**

Here you'll learn about two conjunctions: が **ga** and から **kara**.

The conjunction が **ga**

To express two contrasting or conflicting events or states in the same sentence, use the conjunction particle が **ga**. For example:

高いですが買います。

Takai desu ga kaimasu.

It's expensive, but I'll buy it.

これは高いですがあれは安いです。

Kore wa takai desu ga are wa yasui desu.

This one is expensive, but that one is cheap.

Interestingly, が **ga** can also simply connect two sentences when there is a logical transition, even if there is no conflict or contrast. For example:

佐藤と申しますが社長にお会いできますか。

Satō to mōshimasu ga shachō ni o-ai dekimasu ka.

My name is Sato. Could I see the president of your company?

これは日本で買ったんですがとても便利です。

Kore wa Nihon de katta n desu ga totemo benri desu yo.

I bought this in Japan and it is very convenient!

これは終わりましたが次は何をしましょうか。

Kore wa owarimashita ga tsugi wa nani o shimashō ka.

I finished this one. What shall I do next?

When you use が **ga**, make sure to use the same form for the predicate in the **ga** clause and the predicate in the main clause: both plain forms or both polite forms.

The conjunction から **kara**

The clause conjunction particle から **kara** can create a reason clause, as shown here:

高いですから売れません。

Takai desu kara uremasen.

It's expensive, so it does not sell well.

高いですから買わないでください。

Takai desu kara kawanai de kudasai.

Because it is expensive, please do not buy it.

It is better to use the same form for the predicate in the **kara** clause and the predicate in the main clause: both plain forms or both polite forms.

Combine each pair of sentences into a single sentence.

1. おいしくありませんでした。でも食べました。

Oishiku arimasendeshita. Demo tabemashita.

It was not delicious. However, I ate it.

2. 美香さんはきれいです。でも意地悪です。

Mika-san wa kirei desu. Demo ijiwaru desu.

Mika is pretty. However, she is mean.

3. 日本語の試験を受けたいんです。どう思いますか。

Nihongo no shiken o uke-tai n desu. Dō omoimasu ka.

I want to take a Japanese exam. What do you think?

4. 3級は難しいです。ですから4級を受けるつもりです。

San-kyū wa muzukashii desu. Desu kara yon-kyū o ukeru tsumori desu.

Level 3 is hard. Therefore, I plan to take Level 4.

5. 明日うちに田中さんが来ます。山田さんも来ませんか。

Ashita uchi ni Tanaka-san ga kimasu. Yamada-san mo kimasen ka.

Mr. Tanaka will come to my house tomorrow. Would you like to come, too, Ms. Yamada?

This page intentionally left blank

Answer key

Answers are not given for oral or handwriting exercises or those that explore personal circumstances.

1 Let's say and write Japanese words!

- 1-5 1. かい 2. いけ 3. おか 4. あき 5. あお
 1-9 1. つち 2. うち 3. て 4. たか 5. ちか 6. てつ
 1-13 1. はし 2. くに 3. なし 4. あな 5. はか
 1-16 1. eye 2. ear 3. mouth 4. nose 5. foot 6. head
 1-17 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a
 1-18 1. くち 2. あたま 3. やま 4. かわ 5. ほし
 1-20 1. おとうさん 2. おかあさん 3. おにいさん 4. おねえさん
 1-22 1. しょうどう 2. おりがみ 3. じゅうどう 4. きもの 5. いけばな
 1-23 1. Tokyo 2. Kyoto 3. Osaka
 1-24 1. ノ, フ, ヘ, レ 2. エキテニモ 3. ウ, カ, キ, セ, ヘ, モ, ヤ, ラ, リ, for example
 1-25 1. シ shi and ツ tsu 2. ン n and ソ so 3. ク ku and ケ ke 4. ク ku and ワ wa
 5. ク ku and タ ta 6. ロ ro and コ ko 7. ル ru and レ re 8. チ chi and テ te
 1-26 1. test 2. camera 3. necktie 4. hotel
 1-31 1. アメリカ 2. カナダ 3. ロシア 4. フランス
 1-34 1. mouth 2. mountain 3. river 4. fire 5. moon 6. tree

2 Getting to know someone

- 2-1 こちらこそ Kochira koso
 2-2 どちら dochira
 2-3 1. e 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a
 2-4 1. イタリア Italia Italy
 2. スペイン Supein Spain
 3. ロシア Roshia Russia
 4. インド Indo India
 5. ドイツ Doitsu Germany
 6. フランス Furansu France
 7. タイ Tai Thailand
 8. ケニア Kenia Kenya
 9. チリ Chiri Chile

ウ	ワ	エ	ク	コ	セ
ル	ロ	サ	ス	フ	イ
カ	シ	イ	ペ	ク	タ
オ	ア	タ	イ	チ	リ
ナ	フ	ラ	ン	ス	ア
ケ	ニ	ア	ド	イ	ツ

- 2・5** 1. メイリンさんは北京からです。Meirin-san wa Pekin kara desu.
 2. 由美子さんは東京からです。Yumiko-san wa Tōkyō kara desu.
 3. トーマスさんはカナダからです。Tōmasu-san wa Kanada kara desu.
 4. エミリーさんはイギリスからです。Emiri-san wa igirisu kara desu.
- 2・7** 1. イタリア人 Itaria-jin 3. フィリピン人 Firipin-jin
 2. カナダ人 Kanada-jin 4. インド人 Indo-jin
- 2・8** 1. 武さんは日本人です。Takeshi-san wa Nihon-jin desu.
 2. ヒージョンさんは韓国人です。Hijon-san wa kankoku-jin desu.
 3. ブラウン先生はカナダ人です。Buraun sensei wa Kanada-jin desu.
 4. チェンさんは中国人です。Chen-san wa Chūgoku-jin desu.
 5. メイリンさんも中国人です。Meirin-san mo Chūgoku-jin desu.
 6. ジョージさんはアメリカ人じゃありません。Jōji-san wa Amerika-jin ja arimasen. (or ジョージさんはアメリカ人じゃないです。Jōji-san wa Amerika-jin ja nai desu.)
- 2・10** 1. あの女の人は日本人です。Ano onna no hito wa Nihon-jin desu.
 2. あの男の人は中国人です。Ano otoko no hito wa Chūgoku-jin desu.
 3. あの人は韓国人です。Ano hito wa Kankoku-jin desu.
 4. あの子どもはフランス人です。Ano kodomo wa Furansu-jin desu.
- 2・11** 1. 森さんは弁護士です。Mori-san wa bengoshi desu.
 2. あの人は日本語の学生です。Ano hito wa Nihon-go no gakusei desu.
 3. あの人は日本人の学生です。Ano hito wa Nihon-jin no gakusei desu.
 4. あの女の人は先生です。Ano onna no hito wa sensei desu.
 5. あの女の人は日本語の先生です。Ano onna no hito wa Nihon-go no sensei desu.
- 2・12** 1. Mr. Brown is a Japanese language teacher at a high school.
 2. Mr. Tanaka works at an automobile factory.
 3. Mike is a sales representative at a department store.
- 2・13** 1. 石田さんは大学の学生です。Ishida-san wa daigaku no gakusei desu. (or 石田さんは大学生です。Ishida-san wa daigakusei desu.)
 2. 谷さんは病院で働いています。Tani-san wa byōin de hataraitte imasu.
 3. 上田さんは日本の高校の英語の先生です。Ueda-san wa Nihon no kōkō no eigo no sensei desu.
- 2・14** 1. Chinese
 2. Japanese
 3. works for a bank in Tokyo
 4. teaches English in a high school in Yokohama
 5. studies economics in a college in the United States
- 2・15** 1. お姉さん onēsan
 2. 父 chichi
 3. 日本人 Nihon-jin
 4. 日本語の学生 Nihon-go no gakusei
 5. ケン Ken
- 2・16** 1. 私は学生です。Watashi wa gakusei desu. I am a student.
 2. 母は看護師です。Haha wa kangoshi desu. My mother is a nurse.
 3. チェンさんは中国人じゃありません。Chen-san wa Chūgoku-jin ja arimasen. Mr. Chen is not Chinese.
 4. チェンさんのお母さんは韓国人です。Chen-san no okāsan wa Kankoku-jin desu. Mr. Chen's mother is Korean.
 5. あの人はだれですか。Ano hito wa dare desu ka. Who is that person over there?
 6. あの人は山田さんの妹さんです。Ano hito wa Yamada-san no imōtosan desu. That person is Ms. Yamada's younger sister. or 山田さんの妹さんはあの人です。Yamada-san no imōto-san wa ano hito desu. Ms. Yamada's younger sister is that person over there.
- 2・17** 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False
- 2・19** はい Hai, ありません arimasen
- 2・20** 1. 先生。おはようございます。Sensei. Ohayō gozaimasu.
 2. おかあさん。おはよう。Okāsan. Ohayō.
 3. ってきます。Itte kimasu.
 4. じゃあ、しつれいします。さようなら。Jā, shitsurei shimasu. Sayōnara.
- 2・21** おはようございます ohayō gozaimasu, しつれい Shitsurei

- 2-22** 1. あ、すみません。A, **sumimasen**.
 2. どうもありがとうございます。Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.
 3. どうもすみません。Dōmo sumimasen.
 4. いいえ。Īe.
 5. いいえ。Īe.
- 2-23** いいえ Īe
- 2-24** はい Hai
- 2-25** 1. あれ Are 2. この Kono 3. それ sore 4. あの人 Ano hito
- 2-26** 1. key 2. wallet 3. sunglasses 4. computer
- 2-27** 1. A. Whose umbrella is this? B. That's Ken's umbrella.
 2. A. Whose is that? B. That's Jane's.
 3. A. Whose car is that car? B. That's Mr. Tanaka's.
 4. A. Which one is Mr. Smith's? B. That one.
 5. A. What is that car? B. That's Toyota's Corolla.
- 2-28** 1. この Kono
 2. それ sore
 3. これ Kore
 4. だれ dare
 5. 何 nan
 6. 山田さんの Yamada-san no (It's rude to refer to a person by using a demonstrative pronoun.)
- 2-29** 1. あれは父の本です。Are wa chichi no hon desu.
 2. これは私のです。Kore wa watashi no desu.
 3. あの学生はだれですか。Ano gakusei wa dare desu ka.
 4. それは何ですか。Sore wa nan desu ka.
 5. ケンさんのはどれですか。Ken-san no wa dore desu ka.
- 2-30** どれ dore, これ Kore

3 Using numbers

- 3-5** 1. じゅうご jū-go
 2. さんじゅうはち san-jū-hachi
 3. ごじゅうろく go-jū-roku
 4. ななじゅうなな nana-jū-nana
 5. はちじゅうきゅう hachi-jū-kyū
- 3-6** 1. にまん にせん にひゃく にじゅう に
 ni-man ni-sen ni-hyaku ni-jū-ni
 2. さんまん さんぜん さんびゃく さんじゅうさん
 san-man san-zen san-byaku san-jū-san
 3. ろくまんろくせんろっぴゃくろくじゅうろく
 roku-man roku-sen rop-pyaku roku-jū-roku
 4. はちまんはっせんはっぴゃくはちじゅうはち
 Hachi-man has-sen hap-pyaku hachi-jū-hachi
 5. きゅうまんきゅうせんきゅうひゃくきゅうじゅうきゅう
 kyū-man kyū-sen kyū-hyaku kyū-jū-kyū
- 3-7** 1. いちまんきゅうせんはっぴゃく
 ichi-man kyū-sen hap-pyaku
 2. よんまんよんせんななひゃくななじゅういち
 yon-man yon-sen nana-hyaku nana-jū-ichi
 3. ごまんろくせんごひゃくにじゅうご
 go-man roku-sen go-hyaku ni-jū-go
- 3-14** 1. I don't know. (ちょっと chotto is added to make the expression soft.)
 2. Then it's okay. (or Never mind.)
- 3-15** 1. 何時 nan-ji 2. どうも dōmo

- 3-16** 1. 何時 nan-ji 2. 8時 hachi-ji
- 3-17** 1. 午前6時35分 Gozen roku-ji san-jū-go-fun
2. 午後1時 Gogo ichi-ji
- 3-18** 1. 月曜日 Getsuyōbi
2. 4月1日 Shi-gatsu tsuitachi
3. 午後9時 gogo ku-ji
4. 午前2時30分 gozen ni-ji san-jup-pun (or gozen ni-ji han)
5. 1998年 sen-kyū-hyaku-kyū-jū-hachi-nen
- 3-19** 5月5日 Go-gatsu itsuka 2月14日 Ni-gatsu jū-yok-ka
- 3-22** 1. いくら ikura 2. ください kudasai
- 3-23** 1. ふたり futa-ri (2人) 4. ごさつ go-satsu (5冊)
2. にだい ni-dai (2台) 5. さんびき san-biki (3匹)
3. ふたつ futa-tsu (2つ) 6. いっぴき ip-piki (1匹)
- 3-24** 1. 犬が2匹います。Inu ga ni-hiki imasu.
2. 切手が2枚あります。Kitte ga ni-mai arimasu.
3. 車が3台あります。Kuruma ga san-dai arimasu.
4. ノートを3冊ください。Nōto o san-satsu kudasai.
5. バナナを2本ください。Banana o ni-hon kudasai.
6. バナナを2本とりんごを3つください。Banana o ni-hon to ringo o mit-tsu kudasai.

4 Around town

- 4-1** 1. 取ります torimasu 7. 買います kaimasu
2. 売ります urimasu 8. 書きます kakimasu
3. 始まります hajimarimasu 9. 泳ぎます oyogimasu
4. 作ります tsukurimasu 10. 運びます hakobimasu
5. 読みます yomimasu 11. 待ちます machimasu
6. 飲みます nomimasu 12. 話します hanashimasu
- 4-2** 1. 変えます kaemasu 3. 食べます tabemasu
2. 着ます kimasu 4. 寝ます nemasu
- 4-3** 1. 帰ります kaerimasu 3. 走ります hashirimasu
2. 切ります kirimasu 4. しゃべります shaberimasu
- 4-4** 1. 作る tsukuru, 作ります tsukurimasu
2. 読む yomu, 読みます yomimasu
3. 書く kaku, 書きます kakimasu
4. 飲む nomu, 飲みます nomimasu
5. 行く iku, 行きます ikimasu
6. 勉強する benkyō-suru, 勉強します benkyō-shimasu
7. 来る kuru, 来ます kimasu
- 4-5** 1. 食べます tabemasu
2. 帰ります kaerimasu
3. 寝ます nemasu
- 4-6** 1. なります narimasu 9. 洗います araimasu
2. 売ります urimasu 10. 待ちます machimasu
3. 取ります torimasu 11. 持ちます mochimasu
4. 聞きます kikimasu 12. 休みます yasumimasu
5. 歩きます arukimasu 13. 住みます sumimasu
6. 貸します kashimasu 14. 死にます shinimasu
7. 話します hanashimasu 15. 選びます erabimasu
8. 会います aimasu 16. 運びます hakobimasu
- 4-7** 1. u verb 2. u verb 3. ru verb 4. ru verb 5. ru verb 6. ru verb 7. u verb 8. ru verb
9. ru verb 10. ru verb
- 4-8** 1. e 2. f 3. a 4. d 5. g 6. h 7. b 8. c
- 4-9** 1. 行きません ikimasen 3. 行きます ikimasu
2. 来ます kimasu 4. 帰りますか kaerimasu ka

- 4-10** 1. どこに **doko ni**
2. どこかに **dokoka ni**
3. どこにも行きません **doko ni mo ikimasen**
- 4-11** 1. 今日は本屋に行きます。 **Kyō wa hon'ya ni ikimasu.**
2. あしたはどこにも行きません。 **Ashita wa doko ni mo ikimasen.**
3. あしたはどこかに行きますか。 **Ashita wa dokoka ni ikimasu ka.**
4. 今日はどこに行きますか。 **Kyō wa doko ni ikimasu ka.**
- 4-12** 1. *I often go to restaurants.*
2. *I sometimes go to a department store.*
3. *I go to a park once in a while.*
4. *I don't go to a library very often.*
5. *I never go to karaoke.*
- 4-13** 1. 行きます **ikimasu** 2. 行きません **ikimasen** 3. 行きます **ikimasu**
- 4-14** 1. *Why don't we go to see a movie tonight?*
2. *Why don't we go for camping?*
3. *Why don't we go shopping on Saturday?*
4. *Why don't we go to buy a Japanese dictionary tomorrow?*
5. *Why don't we visit (go for fun) Okinawa next year?*
6. *Why don't we visit Mike's home next week?*
7. *Around what time shall we go?*
- 4-15** 1. 今日はスーパーに行きますか。 **Kyō wa sūpā ni ikimasu ka.**
2. あしたはどこかに行きますか。 **Ashita wa dokoka ni ikimasu ka.**
3. 来年日本に行きませんか。 **Rainen Nihon ni ikimasen ka.**
4. レストランにはよく行きますか。 **Resutoran ni wa yoku ikimasu ka.**
5. 図書館にはあまり行きません。 **Toshokan ni wa amari ikimasen.**
6. 公園に行きましょう。 **Kōen ni ikimashō.**
- 4-16** 1. 車で **kuruma de**
2. バスと電車で **basu to densha de**
3. 歩いて **aruite**
4. タクシーで **takushī de**
5. 自転車で **jitensha de**
- 4-17** 1. 45 minutes 2. 25 minutes 3. bus and subway
- 4-18** 1. tonight, around 7 PM
2. Takeshi, George, Takako, and Yukiko
3. *It's great, indeed, right?*
4. *Certainly fine!*

5 Talking about activities

- 5-1** 1. *I will read a magazine.*
2. *I will write a letter.*
3. *I will watch a movie.*
4. *I will play a game.*
5. *I will play the piano.*
- 5-2** 1. に **ni** 2. を **o** 3. を **o** 4. を **o** 5. を **o** 6. を **o** 7. を **o** 8. に **ni**
- 5-3** 1. に **ni** 2. で **de** 3. で **de**, に **ni** 4. に **ni** 5. で **de** 6. で **de** 7. で **de**, で **de**
- 5-4** 1. で **de**, を **o** 2. を **o**, で **de** 3. で **de**, に **ni** 4. で **de** 5. で **de** 6. を **o**
- 5-5** *On weekends, I usually go shopping in the morning. I often go to a department store. Then I eat at a restaurant. Then I watch a movie at a movie theater.*
- 5-7** 1. を **o** 2. が **ga** 3. が **ga**, を **o**, が **ga** 4. を **o**
- 5-8** 1. を **o** 2. と **to** 3. と **to** 4. と **to**, を **o** 5. と **to**, を **o**
- 5-9** 1. Mika's mother
2. breakfast on weekends
3. Sunday lunch

- 5-10** 1. 食べました **tabemashita** 4. 話しません **hanashimasen**
 2. 食べません **tabemasen** 5. しませんでした **shimasendeshita**
 3. 話します **hanashimasu**
- 5-11** 1. 飲まない **nomanai** 7. しない **shinai**
 2. うたわない **utawanai** 8. 行かない **ikanai**
 3. 見ない **minai** 9. 泳がない **oyoganai**
 4. 走らない **hashiranai** 10. 遊ばない **asobanai**
 5. 作らない **tsukuranai** 11. 待たない **matanai**
 6. 来ない **konai** 12. 話さない **hanasanai**
- 5-12** 1. 来年日本に行くつもりです。 **Rainen Nihon ni iku tsumori desu.**
 2. 大学院には行かないつもりです。 **Daigakuin ni wa ikanai tsumori desu.**
 3. 日曜日に掃除と洗濯と買い物をするつもりです。 **Nichiyōbi ni sōji to sentaku to kaimono o suru tsumori desu.**
 4. 今晚は寝ないつもりです。 **Konban wa nenai tsumori desu.**
- 5-13** 1. カタカナが書ける **katakana ga kakeru**
 2. カタカナで名前が書ける **katakana de namae ga kakeru**
 3. 漢字が読める **kanji ga yomeru**
 4. 日本語が話せる **Nihon-go ga hanaseru**
 5. 日本語で話せる **Nihon-go de hanaseru**
 6. てんぷらが作れる **tenpura ga tsukureru**
 7. 車が運転できる **kuruma ga unten dekiru**
- 5-15** 1. かいて **kaite** 6. とんで **tonde**
 2. かって **katte** 7. よんで **yonde**
 3. いって **itte** 8. およいで **oyoide**
 4. いって **itte** 9. して **shite**
 5. かって **katte** 10. きて **kite**
- 5-16** 1. 入ってください。 **Haitte kudasai.**
 2. 座ってください。 **Suwatte kudasai.**
 3. 休んでください。 **Yasunde kudasai.**
 4. この手紙を読んでください。 **Kono tegami o yonde kudasai.**
 5. また来てください。 **Mata kite kudasai.**
 6. タバコをすわないでください。 **Tabako o suwanai de kudasai.**
 7. しゃべらないでください。 **Shaberanai de kudasai.**
 8. 静かにしてください。 **Shizuka ni shite kudasai.**
- 5-17** 1. *My younger sister is watching TV now.*
 2. *My older brother swims for one hour every morning.*
 3. *Mr. Tanaka has not come yet.*
 4. *My father has gone to Osaka.*
 5. *My older sister is already married.*
 6. *My younger brother has been playing a game since this morning continuously.*
- 5-19** 1. She runs, plays tennis, and practices karate.
 2. He cooks.
 3. Takako is going to Ken's house .

6 Talking about people and things and their locations

- 6-1** 1. d 2. e 3. a 4. c 5. b
- 6-2** 1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. f 6. e
- 6-3** 1. あります **arimasu**
 2. います **imasu**
 3. います **imasu**
 4. いらっしゃいます **irasshaimasu**
 5. あります **arimasu**

- 6-4** 1. 富士山はどこにありますか。Fujisan wa doko ni arimasu ka.
 2. 山田さんのうちには犬がいます。Yamada-san no uchi ni wa inu ga imasu.
 3. 田中さんはどこにいますか。Tanaka-san wa doko ni imasu ka.
 4. 田中さんは図書館にいます。Tanaka-san wa toshokan ni imasu.
 5. あそこにメアリーさんがいますよ。Asoko ni Meari-san ga imasu yo.
- 6-5** 1. テレビ terebi 2. 冷蔵庫 reizōko 3. ベッド beddo 4. 椅子 isu 5. 机 tsukue
- 6-7** 1. マイクさんのうちにはテレビが3台あります。Maiku-san no uchi ni wa terebi ga san-dai arimasu.
 2. 森さんのうちには庭がありません。Mori-san no uchi ni wa niwa ga arimasen.
 3. メアリーさんのうちには地下室があります。Meari-san no uchi ni wa chikashitsu ga arimasu.
 4. ジョージさんのアパートには洗濯機と乾燥機がありません。Jōji-san no apāto ni wa sentakuki to kansōki ga arimasen.
- 6-8** 1. three 2. one 3. five
- 6-10** 1. 本箱は机の横にあります。Honbako wa tsukue no yoko ni arimasu.
 2. 机は窓の前にあります。Tsukue wa mado no mae ni arimasu.
 3. 辞書は机の引き出しの中にあります。Jisho wa tsukue no hikidashi no naka ni arimasu.
 4. ソファーは机とベッドの間にあります。Sofā wa tsukue to beddo no aida ni arimasu.
- 6-11** 1. 郵便局は大学の南にあります。Yūbinkyoku wa daigaku no minami ni arimasu.
 2. レストランは病院と本屋の間にあります。Resutoran wa byōin to hon'ya no aida ni arimasu.
 3. 銀行は市役所の隣にあります。Ginkō wa shiyakusho no tonari ni arimasu.
 4. 私のアパートは小学校の近くにあります。Watashi no apāto wa shōgakkō no chikaku ni arimasu.
- 6-12** 1. in the center of the town
 2. on Sakura Street
 3. five minutes by bicycle
- 6-13** 1. この通りをまっすぐ行ってください。Kono tōri o massugu itte kudasai.
 2. あの交差点を左に曲がってください。Ano kōsaten o hidari ni magatte kudasai.
 3. バス停を過ぎてください。Basu-tē o sugite kudasai.
 4. あの橋を渡ってください。Ano hashi o watatte kudasai.
 5. 三つ目の角を右に曲がってください。Mit-tsu-me no kado o migi ni magatte kudasai.
- 6-14** の no, に ni, を o, が ga
- 6-15** 1. I have two younger sisters.
 2. I have two younger sisters and one younger brother.
 3. Do you have siblings, Ms. Yamada? (or Does Ms. Yamada have siblings?)
 4. I don't have siblings.
 5. My older brother has a fiancé.
 6. Mr. Chen has 30 cousins.
- 6-16** 1. none 2. only child 3. one 4. three
- 6-17** 1. I have three classes today. So I will not go to work.
 2. I have no job today. So why don't we go shopping together?
 3. I have an interview and an exam tomorrow. So I cannot go anywhere today.
- 6-18** 1. Mondays, Wednesdays, and Fridays
 2. Fridays
 3. from 5 PM to 10 PM
- 6-20** 1. March 11, 2011
 2. Pacific Ocean's open sea, near Tohoku Region
 3. a huge tsunami, fires, and a nuclear power plant accident

7 Describing things

- 7-1** 1. 新しいです。Atarashii desu. (It's new.)
 2. きれいです。Kirei desu. (She is pretty.)
 3. にぎやかです。Nigiyaka desu. (It's crowded and lively.)
 4. 難しいです。Muzukashii desu. (It's difficult.)
 5. おいしいです。Oishii desu. (It's delicious.)
- 7-2** 1. 古いです furui desu 2. 汚いです kitanai desu 3. 高いです takai desu 4. 明るいです akarui desu 5. 大きいです ōkii desu

- 7-3 1. いいえ, 新しくありません。 **Īe, atarashiku arimasen.** (or いいえ, 新しくないです。 **Īe, atarashiku nai desu.**) *No, it is not new.*
 2. いいえ, 静かじゃありません。 **Īe, shizuka ja arimasen.** (or いいえ, 静かじゃないです。 **Īe, shizuka ja nai desu.**) *No, it is not quiet.*
 3. いいえ, 広くありません。 **Īe, hiroku arimasen.** (or いいえ, 広くないです。 **Īe, hiroku nai desu.**) *No, it is not spacious.*
- 7-4 きれい Kirei
- 7-5 1. どんな donna 2. どう dō 3. どんな Donna
- 7-6 1. いいえ, 親切じゃありません。 **Īe, shinsetsu ja arimasen.** (or いいえ, 親切じゃないです。 **Īe, shinsetsu ja nai desu.**)
 2. いいえ, 優しくありません。 **Īe, yasashiku arimasen.** (or いいえ, 優しくないです。 **Īe, yasashiku nai desu.**)
 3. いいえ, まじめじゃありません。 **Īe, majime ja arimasen.** (or いいえ, まじめじゃないです。 **Īe, majime ja nai desu.**)
 4. いいえ, 静かじゃありません。 **Īe, shizuka ja arimasen.** (or いいえ, 静かじゃないです。 **Īe, shizuka ja nai desu.**)
- 7-7 1. まあまā māmā 2. ぜんぜん zenzen 3. ちょっと chotto 4. とても totemo
- 7-9 1. 背が高い se ga takai
 2. やせています yasete imasu
 3. 髪が短いです kami ga mijikai desu
 4. 背が低いです se ga hikui desu
- 7-11 どんな donna, やさしい yasashii, まあまā māmā
- 7-12 1. Yes 2. No 3. Chinese
- 7-14 1. Hokkaido has delicious food, hot springs, and ski areas. It is cool in summer and cold in winter. There is a famous Snow Festival in Sapporo.
 2. Yes.
 3. Kyoto has old temples and shrines.
- 7-16 1. おいしかったです oishikatta desu was delicious
 2. まずかったです mazukatta desu was bad taste
 3. 甘かったです amakatta desu was sweet
 4. 塩辛かったです shiokarakatta desu was salty
 5. 香りがよかったです kaori ga yokatta desu had nice aromas
- 7-17 1. おいしくありませんでした oishiku arimasendeshita (or おいしくなかったです oishiku nakattadesu) was not delicious
 2. まずくありませんでした mazuku arimasendeshita (or まずくなかったです mazuku nakattadesu) was not bad taste
 3. すっぱくありませんでした suppaku arimasendeshita (or すっぱくなかったです suppaku nakattadesu) was not sour
 4. 苦くありませんでした nigaku arimasendeshita (or 苦くなかったです nigaku nakattadesu) was not bitter
 5. 辛くありませんでした karaku arimasendeshita (or 辛くなかったです karaku nakattadesu) was not spicy
- 7-18 1. かったです katta desu
 2. 高くありませんでした takaku arimasendeshita (or 高くなかったです takaku nakatta desu)
 3. よかったです yokatta desu
- 7-19 1. I hate vegetables. However, my older sister loves vegetables.
 2. Ms. Yamada is good at playing the piano.
 3. My older brother is not good at talking with people.
 4. My older sister is good at playing tennis. She plays tennis with her friend every morning.
- 7-21 1. car and smartphone 2. in his friend's car 3. McDonald's restaurant
- 7-23 1. 着て kite 2. はいて haite 3. かぶって kabutte 4. して shite
- 7-24 1. このコートは長すぎます。 Kono kōto wa naga-sugimasu.
 2. このドレスは地味すぎます。 Kono doresu wa jimi-sugimasu.
 3. このネックレスは高すぎます。 Kono nekkuresu wa taka-sugimasu.
- 7-25 1. 私は黒と赤が好きです。 Watashi wa kuro to aka ga suki desu.
 2. このドレスを着てみました。 Kono doresu o kite mimashita.
 3. このスカートをはいてみてください。 Kono sukāto o haite mite kudasai.
 4. セーターを買いすぎました。 Sētā o kai-sugimashita.

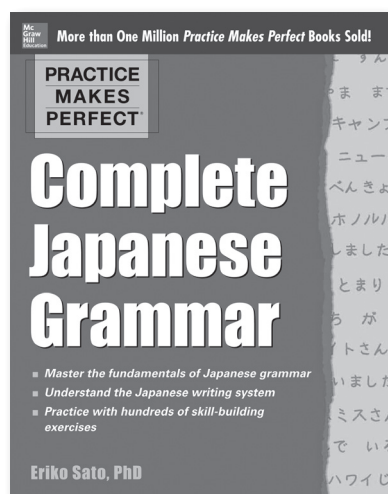
- 7-26** 1. *We don't have a black one. We have a green one.*
 2. *Please try it on.*
 3. *But it's a little too small.*
- 7-27** 1. 上手に **jōzu ni** skillfully
 2. 静かに **shizuka ni** quietly
 3. 早く **hayaku** early
 4. まじめに **majime ni** seriously
 5. よく **yoku** well
- 7-28** 1. *You are a bit noisy. Could you study a bit more quietly, please?*
 2. *I cannot read it. Please write neatly. In addition, please write a bit bigger.*
 3. *The class is from 9 AM. Please come a bit earlier.*
 4. *I thought about it thoroughly. However, I plan not to do (take) this job.*
 5. *Could you be a bit more serious?*
- 7-29** 1. 静かにしてください。 **Shizuka ni shite kudasai.**
 2. 部屋をきれいにしてください。 **Heya o kirei ni shite kudasai.**
 3. あした早く来てください。 **Ashita hayaku kite kudasai.**
 4. よく読んでください。 **Yoku yonde kudasai.**
- 7-30** 1. どちらの方 **dochira no hō** 2. だれ **dare** 3. 何 **nani** 4. どれ **dore** (because it's a list of items)
 5. より **yori** 6. ほど **hodo** 7. と同じぐらい **to onaji gurai**
- 7-32** 1. 父は母ほどやさしくありません。 **Chichi wa haha hodo yasashiku arimasen.**
 2. 中国語と日本語と、どちらの方が簡単ですか。 **Chūgoku-go to Nihon-go to, dochira no hō ga kantan desu ka.**
 3. 車と飛行機と、どちらの方が安全ですか。 **Kuruma to hikōki to, dochira no hō ga anzen desu ka.**
 4. カタカナはひらがなと同じぐらい簡単です。 **Katakana wa hiragana to onaji gurai kantan desu.**
 5. 私は父より背が高いです。 **Watashi wa chichi yori se ga takai desu.**

8 Making connections

- 8-1** 1. 行く **iku** 2. 飲んだ **nonda** 3. 食べなかった **tabenakatta** 4. 高かった **takakatta**
 5. きれいだった **kirei datta** 6. すしじゃなかった **sushi ja nakatta**
- 8-2** 1. 飲んでいて **nonde ita** 2. 飲めない **nomenai** (potential form) 3. 飲みたい **nomi-tai**
 4. 食べすぎた **tabe-sugita** 5. 着てみる **kite-miru**
- 8-3** 1. 私は日本語は簡単だと思います。 **Watashi wa Nihon-go wa kantan da to omoimasu.**
 2. 私は漢字は書けないと思います。 **Watashi wa kanji wa kakenai to omoimasu.** (or 私は漢字が書けると
 と思いません。 **Watashi wa kanji ga kakeru to omoimasen.**)
 3. (私は)このセーターは大きすぎると思います。 **(Watashi wa) kono sētā wa ōki-sugiru to omoimasu.**
 4. (私は)あのレストランの食べ物はおいしかったと思います。 **(Watashi wa) ano resutoran no
 tabemono wa oishikatta to omoimasu.**
 5. 母はこのドレスは高すぎると思っています。 **Haha wa kono doresu wa takas-sugiru to omotte imasu.**
- 8-4** 1. 昨日来た男の人は日本人でした。 **Kinō kita otoko no hito wa Nihon-jin deshita.** *The man who came
 (here) yesterday was Japanese.*
 2. 母が作ったてんぷらはおいしかったです。 **Haha ga tsukutta tempura wa oishikatta desu.** *The tempura
 my mother made was delicious.*
 3. 田中さんは昨日着ていた洋服を今日も着ています。 **Tanaka-san wa kinō kite ita yōfuku o kyō mo kite
 imasu.** *Mr. Tanaka is wearing the clothes that he was wearing yesterday today also.*
- 8-5** 1. あそこでコーヒを飲んでいる人は私の友達です。 **Asoko de kōhī o nonde iru hito wa watashi no
 tomodachi desu.**
 2. 私が去年買った車はよくありません。 **Watashi ga kyonen katta kuruma wa yoku arimasen.** (or . . .
 よくありません。 **yoku nai desu.**)
 3. あの犬は私が先週公園で見た犬です。 **Ano inu wa watashi ga senshū kōen de mita inu desu.**
- 8-6** 1. 来月結婚するんです。 **Raigetsu kekkon suru n desu.**
 2. お金がないんです。 **O-kane ga nai n desu.** (Remember that ある **aru** is a slightly irregular **u** verb in that
 its **nai** form is just **ない** **nai**.)
 3. 会社を辞めたんです。 **Kaisha o yameta n desu.**
 4. 私の父は韓国人なんです。 **Watashi no chichi wa kankoku-jin na n desu.**

- 8-7**
1. どうしてホテルをキャンセルしたんですか。Dōshite hoteru o kyanseru shita n desu ka. *Why did you cancel the hotel (reservation)?*
 2. どうして会議に出ないんですか。Dōshite kaigi ni denai n desu ka. *Why are you not attending the conference?*
 3. どうして山田さんの車を買わなかったんですか。Dōshite Yamada-san no kuruma o kawanakatta n desu ka. *Why didn't you buy Ms. Yamada's car?*
 4. どうして韓国語を勉強しているんですか。Dōshite Kankoku-go o benkyō shite iru n desu ka. *Why are you studying Korean?*
- 8-8**
1. 漢字が難しいからです。Kanji ga muzukashii kara desu. *It is because kanji is hard.*
 2. お金がないからです。O-kane ga nai kara desu. *It is because I don't have money.*
 3. とても高かったからです。Totemo takakatta kara desu. *It is because it was very expensive.*
 4. あまりきれいじゃなかったからです。Amari kirei ja nakatta kara desu. *It is because it was not very pretty.*
- 8-10**
1. 日本に行ったことがありますか。Nihon ni itta koto ga arimasu ka.
 2. クレジットカードをなくしたことがありますか。Kurejittokādo o nakushita koto ga arimasu ka.
 3. ヘリコプターに乗ったことがありますか。Herikoputā ni notta koto ga arimasu ka.
 4. 宮崎駿のアニメを見たことがありますか。Miyazaki Hayao no anime o mita koto ga arimasu ka.
- 8-12**
1. *Mike, have you been to Japan?*
 2. *He was saying that it was very small.*
 3. *I am thinking of staying there also. (I'd like to stay there also.)*
- 8-13**
1. *It will probably be cloudy all day today.*
 2. *It will probably rain tomorrow afternoon.*
 3. *It will probably snow tomorrow evening.*
 4. *It will probably be clear this weekend.*
- 8-14**
1. 出 **de**
 2. あり **ari**
 3. 咳 **seki**
 4. 痛い **itai**
- 8-15**
1. yes
 2. yes
 3. no
 4. possibly pneumonia
- 8-16**
1. 昨日はテレビを見て宿題をして寝ました。Kinō wa terebio mite shukudai o shite nemashita. *I watched TV and did my homework yesterday.*
 2. あしたは掃除をして買い物をして料理をします。Ashita wa sōji o shite kaimono o shite ryōri o shimasu. *I will go shopping and cook tomorrow.*
 3. マイクさんは頭がよくて優しくてかっこいいです。Maiku-san wa atama ga yokute yasashikute kakkoiidesu. *Mike is smart, kind, and good-looking.*
 4. メアリーさんはきれいで頭がいいです。Meari-san wa kirei de atama ga ii desu. *Mary is pretty and smart.*
 5. このレストランのすしは高くなくておいしいです。Kono resutoran no sushi wa takaku nakute oishii desu. *This restaurant's sushi is not expensive and delicious.*
- 8-17**
1. じゃなくて **ja nakute**
 2. あびないで **abinai de**
 3. 来なくて **konakute**
 4. すわないで **suwanai de**
 5. おきられなくて **okirarenakute**
- 8-18**
1. 私に聞いて買ってください。Watashi ni kiite katte kudasai.
 2. 手を洗わないで食べないでください。Te o arawanai de tabenai de kudasai.
 3. 頭が痛くて薬をのみました。Atama ga itakute kusuri o nomimashita.
- 8-19**
1. おいしくありませんでしたが食べました。Oishiku arimasendeshita ga tabemashita.
 2. 美香さんはきれいですが意地悪です。Mika-san wa kirei desu ga ijiwaru desu.
 3. 日本語の試験を受けたいんですがどう思いますか。Nihon-go no shiken o uketai n desu ga dō omoimasu ka.
 4. 3級は難しいですから4級を受けるつもりです。San-kyū wa muzukashii desu kara yon-kyū o ukeru tsumori desu.
 5. あしたうちに田中さんが来ますが山田さんも来ませんか。Ashita uchi ni Tanaka-san ga kimasu ga Yamada-san mo kimasen ka.

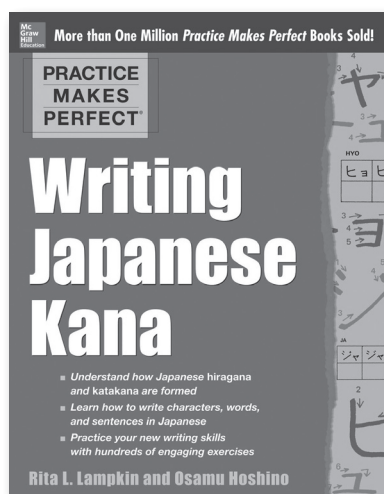
Take Your Japanese Skills Further!



**Practice Makes Perfect:
Complete Japanese Grammar**
Eriko Sato

This book focuses on the practical aspects of Japanese as it's really spoken, with grammar points clearly explained through realistic examples and plenty of practice exercises.

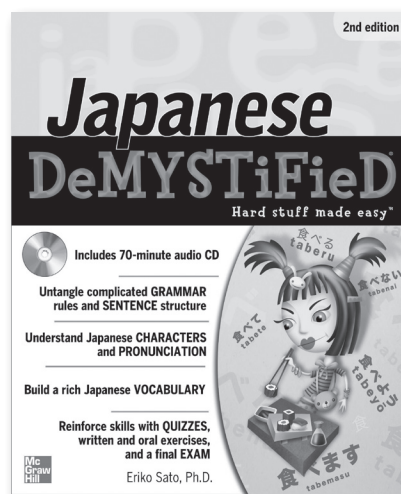
978-0-07-180835-4 • \$18.00



**Practice Makes Perfect:
Writing Japanese Kana**
*Rita L. Lampkin and
Osamu Hoshino*

Perfect for intermediate to advanced learners of Japanese, this workbook leads you step-by-step through the complexities of writing *hiragana* and *katakana* characters.

978-0-07-182798-0 • \$16.00



**Japanese DeMYSTiFieD with
Audio CD, 2nd Edition**
Eriko Sato

The book/audio CD package gives you the essentials of Japanese grammar in an unintimidating format, allowing you to work at your own pace.

978-0-07-179771-9 • \$25.00



Learn More. Do More.
MHPROFESSIONAL.COM